

T R A V E L S
INTO THE
INTERIOR PARTS
OF
A F R I C A,

BY THE
CAPE OF GOOD HOPE;

IN THE YEARS 1780, 81, 82, 83, 84 AND 85.

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH OF M. LE VAILLANT.

ILLUSTRATED WITH ELEGANT COPPER-PLATES.

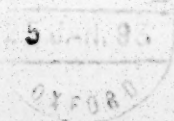
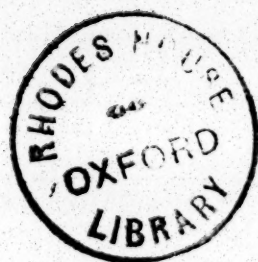
IN TWO VOLUMES.

V O L. I.

P E R T H:

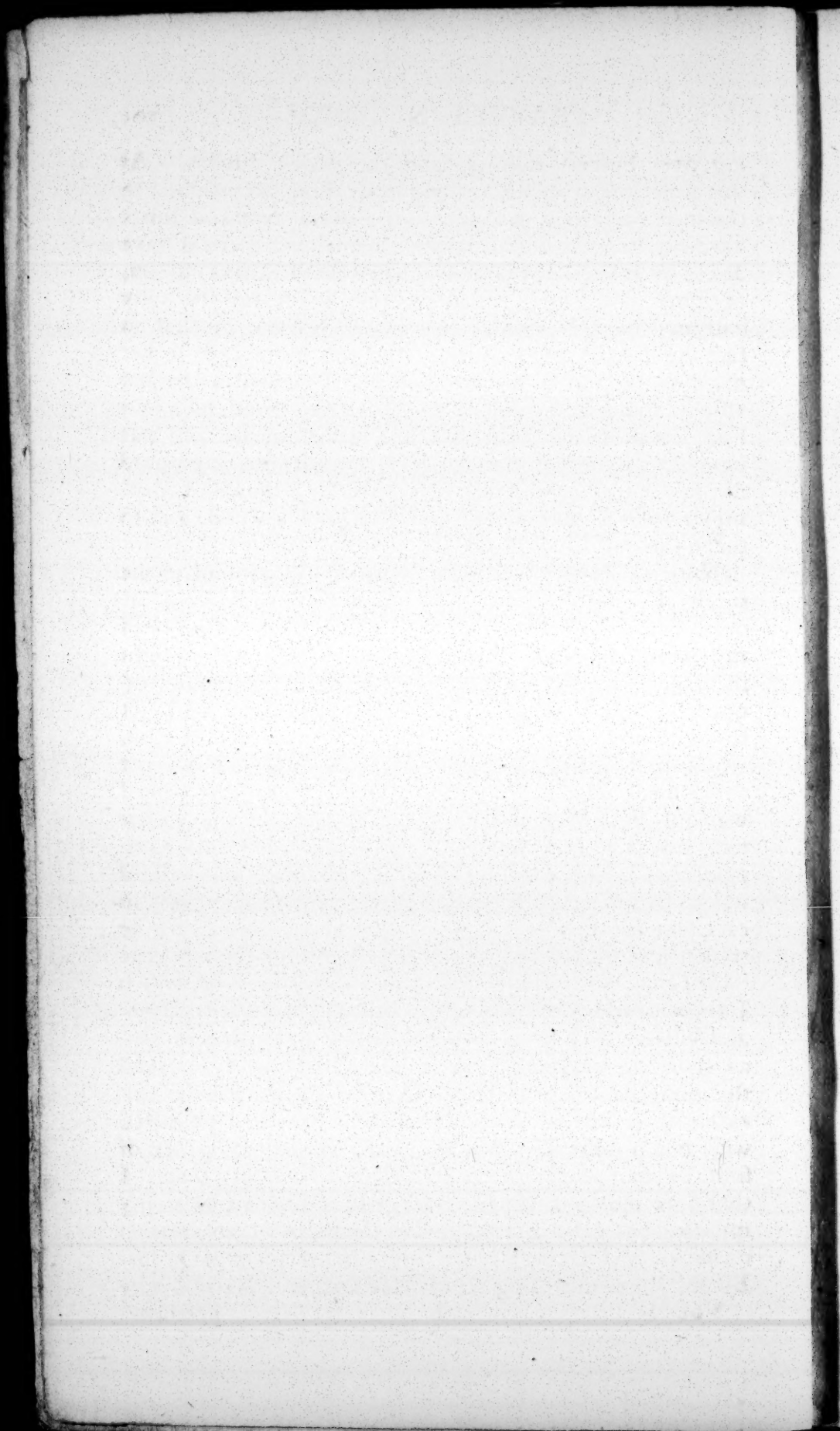
PRINTED BY R. MORISON JUNIOR,
FOR R. MORISON AND SON, BOOKSELLERS, PERTH.
M,DCC,XCI.

20749. e 20



ADVERTISEMENT.

THE Editors beg leave to mention to their Readers, that several things in the following Preface, refer to another Work of the same Author, not yet Published.



P R E F A C E.

NATURAL Philosophers have considered it as proper, to form connections between the Anatomy of the bodies of man and the brute creation; and to judge of the one in many cases from the other. In consequence of this relation, understood only by men of Science, the parts of the body which support a bird, are called its toes; that part which rises in some birds more, in others less perpendicularly, generally called the *leg*, they call the *foot*; this with the heel above it, the leg directly follows and commonly is considered as the *thigh*; and in a word, what is indeed the thigh, is so much concealed, as to be scarcely discernible in a living bird, and this may be said to constitute a part of the body. From this we may infer, that however ridiculous or absurd it may seem to those who are not connoisseurs, the foot of a heron, is as large as all its body according to the arrangement instituted by the *Literati*; and thus a bird walks on its claws and not its feet. I have been led to think this explanation the more necessary, in order that the different observations on these animals in the following pages may be the better understood. Without this explanation, three-fourths of what I may be led to say as to birds, quadrupeds, &c. would, to the greater part of my readers be unintelligible.

It is easier to forgive the writers of those voluminous works, and the huge compilations in which old books are laid under contribution, which are stuffed with long quotations, and where the dreams of the imagination and ignorance are presented as immutable truths, merely because they are ancient. But when a writer, seized with a mania for a certain science, has not in himself sufficient resources to extend its progress; when, immured in his cabinet, he pretends to establish principles and dictate laws; when he prostitutes the valuable gifts of genius to propagate old errors, and to cover, with the graces of elocution, lies received as truths by our forefathers; however he may disguise, twist, or appropriate them to himself, I cannot forgive him whilst he thus evidently adorns himself with the spoils of others, with whatever pains he may have arranged the various patches.

Determined to mention only what I have seen or done, I shall not introduce any thing into this work not strictly my own; and therefore I shall certainly not be answerable for the faults of my predecessors.

If in some places of my relation observations be found diametrically opposite to those of other travellers, I shall not go so far as to assert that they have been deceived: I mean to depreciate no one; I choose rather to suppose, on certain articles, that difference of time, or their being seen under different points of view, may have produced differences also in their relations and results; they are then merely errors or illusions, of the same kind as an optical deception.

As to objects, however, which, having been so slightly touched on, materially disfigure the truth, my opinion
(though

(though I wish it not to be universally adopted) will never give way when I am certain of facts, and advance nothing but what is supported by evidence.

It is not more than a century, that a taste for travelling has prevailed in Europe. The French particularly, more than any other, usually happy in their country; and attached to their own native soil, left it with regret, and considered the absence of a month as a species of exile; they contented themselves with waiting for, and anxiously swallowing, the absurd stories published by presuming impostors about remote nations, and amused themselves with stories of their amazing discoveries and incredible adventures. The exaggerating writer stipulated, if I may say so, with the public credulity, and thought himself well recompensed if he found only one half of the bombast and the wonderful contained in his work exploded. The sciences wandered in the darkness of uncertainty, and natural history was not even in its infancy.

The genius of discoveries gradually extended her wings, and the letters and the arts have given place to the sciences. A passion for travelling is awakened; that desire, still more insatiable, of acquiring knowledge, and comparing the objects of it, has increased in proportion to the wonders produced by it: the more dangers have been removed, the more men have passed their ancient bounds; and what formerly appeared an insurmountable obstacle, at present is only a childish excuse, a shameful shift to conceal weakness and timidity.

Having been educated more than most people in very different principles, I always entertained a most ardent desire for travelling, which I attempted to repress; but

it was only by yielding to its transports, that I was able to moderate its violence.

I passed the seas, as I wished to survey other men, other productions, and other climates; I penetrated into some of the unknown deserts of Africa; and I may say that I conquered a small portion of the globe.

I had no thirst after reputation; conscious of no merit that entitled me to it, I employed my time merely for pleasure.

As my family and friends thought that an account of my travels, and some particulars concerning my discoveries in natural history, might be useful, I have given them this account and these particulars, such as they are, looking for no other merit on this account, than that of complaisance, and renouncing every kind of pretension to literature, the burden of which I could not endure.

Some may perhaps think it strange, that in prefacing an account of travels lately undertaken into Africa I have been obliged to return to what is long past, and to carry my readers to the first steps of my infancy in South America. To illustrate this, I must observe, that I considered it as proper to justify, by the beginning of my life, my manner of seeing, thinking, and acting, which will always be agreeable to the taste of the climate, and which, judged perhaps with severity, would not fail to displease those obstinate minds who can never permit their prejudices to be overcome, or principles and customs hitherto received to be attacked, without losing temper. But in whatever manner my freedom in expressing my thoughts, and even in pretending to correct the errors of genius, may be considered, I consider it as important to
inform

inform them, that no private dislike, no envy, and no secret displeasure, can overbalance in my mind my attachment to truth, which I cherish above all things, and to which I have sacrificed, in more instances than one, even my vanity.

At the conclusion of this work I shall present the lovers of natural history, with a general description of all the individuals, quadrupeds and birds, which I procured in my travels, and have now in my possession. Such animals as have not been formerly described, or were unknown, will be illustrated by several Coloured Engravings, which will exhibit, a good many *genera*, quite new, and various different *species*. Although several authors have given drawings of and described the Giraffe, I have been led to give new ones, because what drawings I have formerly seen of this animal, or any descriptions I have read of it, differ most essentially, not only from what I observed about it when abroad, but from the original itself now in my cabinet.

INTRODUCTION.

THAT portion of Guiana, which belongs to the Dutch, and is under the Government of the West-India Company, is probably the least known by naturalists, although of all South America it is certainly that, which produces the most curious and remarkable productions of every sort. As it is situated under the scorching climate of the torrid zone, five degrees north of the line, this country, still enveloped by the crust of time, conceals, if we may so express it, the focus where nature forms her exceptions to those general rules which she appears to have established. Reaching about an hundred leagues along the coast, its breadth is almost unlimited. Here the river Surinam rolls its majestic stream: and upon its left bank, three miles from the sea, rises Paramaribo, the principal place of this vast colony: the place of my nativity, and the scene of my puerile days. Educated by enlightened parents, who endeavoured to procure those valuable and interesting objects which are dispersed throughout the country, I had constantly in my view the fruits of their labour, and enjoyed at my ease the whole of their curious collection. From my earliest days, these tender parents, who could not enjoy a moment in my absence, and who by their taste were often exposed to distant journies, and to be long absent at the extremities of the colony, took me along with them, making me a sharer in their travels, their labours, and enjoyments. My first years were thus spent in the deserts, and I was born nearly a savage. When reason, which in warm climates always takes the precedence of age, began to dawn in my mind, my taste soon displayed itself, and my parents did every thing in their power to cultivate the first efforts

INTRODUCTION.

efforts of my curiosity. Under such excellent instructors I daily tasted new pleasures : I heard them converse in a manner adapted to my capacity on the objects which they had acquired, and on those which they hoped to procure in future. By these means an abundance of ideas and relations was treasured up in my mind—at first, in an indistinct manner, I confess ; but by degrees with more order and arrangement. Nature, therefore, was my first instructor, because it was to her that my first views were directed.

The desire of making acquisitions, and a spirit of imitation, speedily added impetuosity, and I may say impatience, to my entertaining pursuits. Every thing seemed to whisper to my self-love that I also should endeavour to form a cabinet of natural history. Led away, therefore, by this seducing idea, I quickly traiterously declared war against the weakest animals, and began to search after caterpillars, butterflies, beetles, and in a word, for all kinds of insects.

When people work for themselves, they may, with confined means, and rude and uncultivated talents, form an indifferent work. But I apprehend they will always be most successful, when they spare neither time, care, nor attention ; and when they use their whole talents and abilities. With such a disposition, the almost infallible sign of success, I saw my beautiful collection of insects daily increase under my hands. I placed the highest value upon it, and valued it beyond measure. As I had been the sole former of it, the reader may easily guess how much superior I considered it to that of my parents. Pride, which is always blind, makes the chef-d'ouvres of folly and genius proceed hand in hand.

Wholly occupied with my amusements, I had never yet observed that some obstacle constantly occurs to prevent the success of every undertaking.

We had killed in one of our excursions a female ape, of that species which in the country they call *Baboons*. As she carried a young one on her back, which had not been wounded, we carried them both along with us ; and, when we turned to the plantation, my ape had not left its mother's shoulders. It clung so closely to them, that I was forced to have the assistance of a negro to loose it ;
but

but scarcely was it taken from her, when, like a bird, it darted upon a wooden block which stood near us, covered with my father's peruke, which it embraced with its four paws, and we could not compel it to quit its position. Deceived by its instinct, it still supposed that it was on the back of its mother, and under her protection. As it appeared to be perfectly at ease upon the peruke, I determined to let it remain, and to feed it there with goats milk. It remained in this error for three weeks; but after that period emancipating itself from its own authority, it left the fostering peruke, and by its amusing tricks soon became the friend and the favourite of all the family.

I had, however, without suspecting it, let in a wolf among my flocks. One morning, upon entering my chamber, the door of which I had been so imprudent as to leave open, I saw my unworthy pupil breakfasting heartily on my noble collection. In the first transports of my passion, I determined to strangle it in my arms; but rage and fury soon yielded to pity, when I observed that its voraciousness had exposed it to the most cruel punishment. In eating the beetles, it had swallowed some of the pins upon which they were fastened; and, although it made a thousand efforts to throw them up, all its exertions were in vain. The torture which it underwent, made me forget the devastation it had produced; I thought only of affording it relief: but neither my tears, nor all the art of my father's slaves, whom I called from every quarter with loud cries, could preserve its life. This accident disconcerted me exceedingly, but it did not discourage me: I soon employed myself in new researches; and, not contented with one treasure, I wished to unite several. By a natural progression I turned my attention to birds. As our slaves did not furnish me with a sufficient number, I armed myself with a tube*, and an Indian bow: in a little time I could use them very dexterously. I spent whole days in watching; in short, I became a keen sportsman. It was then remarkable, and I myself was sensible of it, that this taste was changed into a violent rage, which disturbed even my hours of rest, and which years have still strengthened.

I have

* *Sarbacanne* is a kind of tube, through which small darts are blown with the mouth.

INTRODUCTION.

I have been charged by some of my friends of coolness and insensibility; and many of them have considered the singular journies I afterwards undertook as rash enterprises. The former I readily forgive; to the latter I shall make no reply: those, however, who are at the least pains to review the first pursuits of my infancy, will be less surpris'd at this appearance of originality; and will easily see that my education, while both accounts for and excuses the cause of it.

Soon after, my parents, who had fixed the period of their departure for Europe, and who sought no other happiness than that of being united to their family and friends, having settled their affairs, I embarked with them in a ship called the Catherine, and, on the 4th of April 1763, set sail for Holland. In the joy of my heart I partook, by anticipation, of all those pleasures and amusements which my parents proposed to enjoy during the passage. A curiosity, very natural at my age, increased my transports: but this agitation, or rather delirium, did not render me insensible to regret. In so short a space of time I could not become ungrateful, and without emotion lose sight of that bountiful country in which I first drew breath. I often cast a tender look on those happy shores, which were still becoming more and more distant. The more they receded from me, and I was wafted by the winds towards the frozen climates of the north, a dismal sadness threw a damp upon my imagination, and dissipated my conjectures as to the future.

After a dangerous and disagreeable passage, we anchored in the Texel, about nine or ten in the morning, on the 12th of July following.

Being at length arrived in Europe, every thing which I saw appeared so new to me—I appeared so very impatient, plagued people with so many questions, and every object that presented itself to my view appeared so extraordinary—that I myself became an object of astonishment to all around me. My importunities, however, did not always raise the laugh against me; and I made an ample return, by pertinent remarks on America, for the information which the people of Europe were so obliging as to give me.

Having

Having spent some time in Holland we came to France, to the very city where my father was born, and where he settled amidst his family. Here I had a fresh opportunity to indulge my taste, in the cabinet of Mr Becœur, which for the ornithology of Europe, contains the most numerous and best preserved collection I have ever yet seen.

I had followed a plan in Surinam, as to birds, which answered very well, but which spoke little to the imagination, and still less to the eyes. The only method I had, was to preserve their skins by inserting them between the leaves of large books; but here a quite different sight awakened all my senses. Besides preserving them, it was necessary to restore them to their proper shapes. These two necessary points diffculted me exceedingly: I determined to make them a peculiar study; and to these I devoted my whole attention. During two years residence in Germany, and seven in Lorrain and Alsace, I made great havoc among the feathered tribes. To the distinction of species I was anxious to join also a thorough knowledge of their manners; and I was never altogether satisfied with my excursions, but when I could surprise the male and the female in such a situation as left no doubt of their sex. I have often spent whole weeks in watching, to distinguish the species of birds, before I could light on a pair.

In about eight or nine years, therefore, by industry and labour, and after many attempts and much devastation, I was able not only to give to these animals, so tender and delicate, their proper shapes; but also to keep them in that pure and perfect state of preservation, in which all the merit of my collection consists. By being accustomed to live with them in the fields, in the woods, and in their most secret retreats, I have learned also to distinguish the sexes in the most unquestionable manner; a divining art, if the expression may be used, which I do not pretend to consider as a great merit, but which very few ornithologists have acquired. How often have I observed cabinets, curious enough in other respects, sometimes forced separations, sometimes monstrous and unnatural alliances! Here, stationed as male and female, two beings that had never met together; and there, a male and a female classed as two different species, &c.

I increased

I increased in knowledge in this interesting part of natural history ; but I confess that, instead of being satisfied, it only convinced me of the insufficiency of my own strength. A more extensive field was, however, about to be laid before me : opportunity seemed to call me to distant places, and to invite me no longer to delay.

Sometime in the year 1777, a favourable circumstance having led me to Paris, like every other stranger who arrives for the first time in that capital, I paid my tribute of admiration to the cabinets of the curious, and the literati. I was delighted with the beauty and variety of the objects which they contained, and with the prodigious number of individuals of every species, which, like a forced contribution, had come from the four quarters of the world to be arranged methodically, as far as is possible, in a space always unfortunately too confined. During a residence of three years, I saw, studied, and got acquainted with all the most celebrated cabinets ; but their superb collections soon distressed me : they left a vacuum in my mind which nothing could fill up. I no longer saw, in these, assemblages of foreign spoils, but general magazines, where different beings, ranged without choice, and without taste, were buried in profound sleep for science. Nothing gave me any exact information as to their manners, their customs, and their habitudes, which are things the most necessary to be known. This was the study which had occupied the greatest share of my attention in my youth. I had read, indeed, different works upon natural history, but filled with contradictions so disgusting, that informed taste must lose much by perusing them. Above all, I had studied, with the utmost eagerness, those immortal masterpieces, dedicated to the use of posterity by one of the greatest masters who have followed the same enquiries. I every day burnt fresh incense at the feet of his statue : but the magic of his eloquence did not so far seduce me as to make me admire the flights of his imagination ; and I could not forgive in the philosopher the exaggerations of the poet.

Besides, and above all, I was constantly turning my attention towards those parts of the earth which, having never yet been explored, might, by opening a store of new knowledge, help to rectify that I had already acquired.

red. I considered as supremely fortunate the mortal who should have the courage to investigate at its source ; and in this respect the interior parts of Africa appeared to me a Peru. It was a country as yet untouched by the naturalist. Full of these ideas, I persuaded myself that the ardour of zeal might make up for any defect in genius ; and that, by being an accurate observer, one might become a great enough writer. My enthusiasm led me to suppose that I was the privileged person for whom this enterprize was reserved. I readily listened to its gratifying suggestions, and from that have become wholly devoted to it. I could not be diverted from these pursuits by any bonds of friendship or affection ; and having given no hint of my intentions to any one, I set out from Paris, July 17, 1780.

INTRODUCTION.

TRAVELS

INTO THE

INTERIOR PARTS

OF

A F R I C A.

VOYAGE TO THE CAPE.

ANXIOUS to put my proposed scheme into execution, I went to Holland, where I saw the principal cities of that republic, and surveyed their curiosities. When I reached Amsterdam, I found treasures, of which I had before formed no conception. I was received with the greatest politeness by all the learned, and I had free access to all their cabinets. But what chiefly raised my admiration was that of Mr Temminck, treasurer to the East India Company. In his delightful collection I observed many valuable objects which I had never seen in France. Every thing in it to me appeared very rare, and in a state of the highest preservation. His noble place for breeding birds also pointed out, in an admirable series, a double view of nature and art, united to subdue the effects of climate. There the enraptured eye may admire alive the most beautiful and least known individuals of every species; and there may be seen, by the assiduous care bestowed upon them, birds the most distant and the most remote from one another, multiply and propagate, as if they lived in their own native countries. This sight,

VOL. I.

B

I acknowledge,

I acknowledge, still served to redouble my ardour; and completely fortified me against every obstacle, and against all those dangers which I was determined to encounter.

Having soon formed a very intimate friendship with Mr Temminck, he shewed me every mark of civility and kindness. As he had it in his power, more than any other person else, to favour my design, I did not hesitate to inform him of it. Being so much like his own pursuits, he highly approved of it; and directed me to those means which I ought to prosecute in order to succeed. He himself grudged no care nor labour. I was fortunate enough to get permission to take a passage for the Cape in one of the East-India Company's vessels. The time of my departure was settled upon: and I procured from my respectable friend very warm recommendations; had it not been for which, by a singular fatality, as will be seen hereafter, I should have been without doubt exposed to the most cruel and embarrassing difficulties.

Matters being thus far concluded, I employed myself unremittingly, in making the necessary preparations for this grand enterprise. When I had got every thing ready, that I thought likely to be of service to me in the interior parts of Africa, I bade farewell to my friends, and to Europe; and, proceeding in a boat which came to receive me, was conducted to the Texel aboard of the *Held-Woltemaade**, a vessel destined for Ceylon, but which was to touch at the Cape of Good Hope. The wind being unfavourable for quitting the Texel, we were obliged to wait eight days. In that time, I learned that our vessel was an *ex-voto* of the East-India Company, in commemoration of a brave action performed by an inhabitant of the Cape, named *Woltemaade*, who in the time of a dreadful storm had been able, together with his horse, to save fourteen seamen which belonged to a vessel ship-wrecked in Table Bay; but that he himself, fell the victim of his generous efforts, and perished in his last attempt, owing to his own fatigue, and that of his horse, added to the weight of the many unfortunate men who rushed upon him, apprehensive that the vessel might sink before he could be able to return again. A more particular account

* The Captain's name was S—— V——.

count of this very affecting catastrophe will be found in Dr Sparrman's Voyage to the Cape.

Finding the wind at length favourable, we set sail, at eleven o'clock in the morning, on the 19th of December 1781, the very day preceding that on which the English commenced hostilities against the Dutch. Had we remained twenty-four hours longer, the Company would not have suffered us to depart; which would have disconcerted me very unseasonably, and might have probably ruined my plan, and even my hopes. By means of cloudy weather and a thick fog, we were enabled to pass through the Channel unobserved by the English, and we got to the open sea, plowing the waves in perfect security, never suspecting that the flames of war had burst forth in every quarter around us. Sailing sometimes at a quick pace, and sometimes more slowly, we followed the *Mercury*, another of the Company's vessels which was following the same track, and which was commanded by our commodore. Thus far nothing remarkable happened in our voyage; but we were speedily to feel our part of the general convulsion. Sensible that in a passage of three, four, and perhaps six months, I should experience many heavy and dull hours, I had the precaution to provide myself with a few books before I set out. Among the books of travels, and works on natural history, I had the relation of M. De la Caille, which I read for amusement in preference to any other; but I recollect that, having one day lighted upon a passage very antiphranistic, and full of fanaticism, I immediately threw away the book in a rage, resolving to peruse it no longer. The passage is as follows: "The custom of going out to hunt run-a-way negroes, and those who turn plunderers, as we hunt savage animals, has nothing in it that can offend the delicacy of an European. The moment when men, useful in society, abandon their situations, either from a spirit of libertinism or of avarice, they degrade themselves below brutes, and deserve the most rigorous treatment." Ruminating afterwards on the humane, mild, and liberal character, which has every where been bestowed upon this learned man, I again took up the book, and found these reflections: "Laying prejudice aside, which of the two is preferable—he who cultivates

“the arts, and invents exceptions contrary to the rules of nature; or he who, contented with the necessaries of life, regulates his conduct according to the maxims of strict and scrupulous justice?” I then recollected that the abbe De la Caille had been carried from letters and the sciences, before he had time to put the finishing hand to his Journal; and I attributed to the barbarous ignorance of the editor that infamous paragraph, which could in no other manner have fallen from the pen of a clergyman, a philosopher, and a man of letters.

On February 1, 1781, when three degrees to the north of the line, we were informed at day-break, that a sail was discernible in the horizon. The Mercury was then a great way a-head out of sight, and we were totally becalmed. In vain we applied to our spy-glasses; nor could we distinguish, until nine in the morning, that it was only a vessel of small size. Some supposed it to be French; others asserted that it was English: each reasoned according to his own manner, and formed various suppositions, till its nearer approach should discover the truth. Some hours thereafter we observed that it was towed along by two boats, and that it was approaching us by means of the oars. Concluding that it was a vessel in distress, approaching to beg assistance, we permitted it to come up to us without interruption. About three in the afternoon, finding it close by us, we displayed our colours, and fired a gun; but we were very much astonished to receive a shot in our top, which was immediately followed by a whole broadside; the privateer at the same time hoisted the English flag. In vain should I endeavour to describe the stupefaction and astonishment of all the crew upon this unforeseen event. In the vessel there was not perhaps a single man who had ever been in an action. The captain and the officers, accustomed to prosecute their voyage in profound peace, had never had command in similar circumstances; one may therefore easily figure what must have been the amazement of these poor people, unexpectedly attacked in this manner, and without having even time to make any preparation, or even to barricade the quarter deck. Terror, and above all, confusion, were visible on their countenances. The officers roared out as loud as they could; while the soldiers, all

all recruits, none of whom had ever fired a musquet, knew not what answer to make, or whom to obey; in short, at seven in the evening, we had not burnt a single grain of powder. The privateer, in the mean while, kept up a constant fire; and, commanding us to strike, threatened to sink us if we resisted any further. Our captain, violently agitated, continually cried out that he had no authority to surrender at discretion; and that it would be necessary for that purpose to enquire at the *Mercury*, the captain of which was his commodore. The poor man had lost his senses altogether.

A fresh breeze, as if miraculously, at length springing up, the *Mercury* made up to us, and enquired at our captain why he did not fire. The latter answered that he waited for the orders of his superior-officer, and that it was the commodore's duty to give the signal for battle; an excuse quite ridiculous from the mouth of a *seaman*, attacked by a small vessel that mounted sixteen eight pounders, while he had no less than thirty-two of a larger bore, several swivels, and three hundred men above the ship's compliment.

As the *Mercury* began to fire, we did the same likewise; and, though the former was betwixt us and the English, we still continued to discharge our broadsides. Our people, supported by this disorder, had all got intoxicated: some ran backwards and forwards, not knowing whither they went; some staggered and jostled against each other; cried, wept, and swore, or ran to conceal themselves in some secret corner. The chaplain himself, with the view no doubt of rousing his courage, had no scruple in proceeding to the same excess. I saw him with a lanthorn in his hand descend to the fore magazine, in which were upwards of ten tons of gunpowder destined for Ceylon, and without the smallest precaution bring up a sufficiency to make cartridges; for it is to be remembered that none were ready prepared, nor was there ever a thought occurred of making such a provision.

Having baffled all our manœuvres, and bored us on every side, the privateer stood away from us about eleven at night; and, though it soon got to a great distance, we still continued to fire. What a glorious moment for poltroons! With what alertness they went about, and trod

the deck with a firm step; raising their voices, and challenging an enemy that no longer heard them! Their fear however was not completely allayed, and nobody ventured to retire to rest. Following the example set me, I spent all the night in the open air, stretched out upon a bag between two rows of muskets; but I was constantly disturbed by the roaring of the sentinels, who were always haunted by the noise of the English cannon: one may from this easily form a notion of the disorder which reigned during this encounter. Next morning, when the gunners went to clean the guns, they found some of them stuffed to the mouth, and containing three charges, one above another, with as many bullets. In many of the muskets the balls were undermost: and I am fully convinced that, without the assistance of the Mercury, we should have been taken; Fortunately however, we escaped, with a hearty fright. Nothing else but the phantom Terror could have thrown officers into such a consternation, as to suffer themselves to be cannonaded for four hours together, without venturing to return a single shot. The English must certainly have believed that we had no guns, or that those which they saw were only wood. The smallest resistance on our part would have forced them soon to sheer off, and doubtless they would have retired faster than they advanced.

I cannot conclude this sketch, which is well worth the humorous pencil of Calot, without mentioning one circumstance more, which raises a smile even yet whilst I write. Running up and down from the poop to the quarter deck, and from the quarter deck to the cabin (for, having no commission in the ship, it was neither my province to give nor receive orders), I noticed the keeper of the Company's papers faithfully seated near the mysterious box, and in readiness to heave it out at the window on the smallest appearance of danger. This man at least was at his station, but fear had fixed him there much more than duty. The former had got such entire possession of his senses: "Vaillant," cried he, "Vaillant, it is quite over! Alas, my friend, we are ruined, we are undone!" I used every mean in my power to raise his spirits, and to make him change his air, that he might assume another countenance. In the mean while a bullet
came

came whizzing through the cabin, with a terrible noise; and the poor man fell squat down motionless, like an unwieldy mass. Not knowing the cause, I imagined he was dead; but he raised himself up by degrees, fetching several heavy sighs from the bottom of his breast. At this part of the scene, which was very affecting, I could no longer retain my gravity, and I retired to give full vent to loud bursts of laughter.

It was truly shameful that men, formed by their condition, their age, and their experience, to behave with bravery and honour, should fail in so humbling a manner, at a time when in a single minute they might have dissipated every alarm, and made the trifling privateer which harassed us appear as nothing, whilst, on the other hand, children scarcely of age to haul in a cable, shewed a thousand proofs of zeal, courage, and intrepidity? What principally raised my indignation, and yet diverted me at the same time, was, that the morning following they were fully persuaded they had sunk the English vessel, because it was not to be seen. I could not without murmuring hear the reciprocal compliments they paid one another on account of the gallant manner in which they had defended their vessel the preceding evening. As for me, being fully persuaded that the enemy had not got a single shot, I could not help being a little pleasant on the occasion; and told the chief pilot, Van Groenen, that he behaved worse than any of the rest, in the time of the action, and that he then shewed the greatest share of pride and vanity. The sailors smiled in their sleeves, and the pilot noticed it; but as the greater part of them could not in conscience stand up in his defence, it behoved him to be contented with the worthy testimony of his own self-love. To crown the affair, Engelbregt, the surgeon, who during the whole action had lain snug in the hold, was appointed, by virtue of his office, to keep a journal of this glorious transaction. I made free to rally the writer, as I had done the others; but it was out of his power to be revenged, as I was fortunate enough to be in good health. This however was not my situation with the pilot; he made himself ample amends for my diversion, by rendering my situation as unpleasant as he could during the rest of the passage: but luckily it was
not

not of long duration; and after this uncommon adventure we prosecuted our voyage very happily, as we had always a fair wind. After a passage of three months and ten days we saw the mountains of the Cape, which by means of the fineness of the weather made at that time a delightful appearance. I took a drawing of them; and the same day, at three in the afternoon, we anchored in Table Bay.

Mr Staring, the port-captain, immediately boarded us, and confirmed the accounts we had heard of war being declared which the colony had been informed of by a French frigate. The morning following I went on shore, and took the first opportunity to pay my respects to those gentlemen to whom I had been recommended, and to deliver my letters. I was received with great politeness, and even with distinction. Mr Boers the fiscal, and Mr Hacker, shewed me every possible mark of friendship; and I was convinced that I was not indebted for them to that common politeness, which in other places substitutes unmeaning grimace for the noble desire of obliging a fellow-creature, and which is only a perfidious scheme used to deceive the more readily the credulous sincerity of a stranger. They gave me all the services which my recommendations, and their distinguished rank, gave me room to expect. I relied upon them; for I was convinced that I had to do with Dutchmen.

I was anxious to get acquainted in this new country, to which I found myself transported as if in a dream. Every thing appeared in my view in the most striking manner; and I already measured with my eyes those immense deserts into which I was about to penetrate.

Cape Town stands on the declivity of the Table and Lion Hills. It forms an amphitheatre, reaching as far as the borders of the sea. The streets, though broad, are inconvenient, because they are ill paved. The houses, which are almost wholly built in an uniform manner, are beautiful and wide; but they are covered with reeds, to prevent those accidents which heavy roofs in time the of hurricanes might occasion. The interior part of these houses affords no marks of frivolous luxury; all the furniture is in a noble and simple taste: no tapestries are ever seen in them: a few paintings and mirrors are their chief ornaments.

naments. The entrance to the city by the square of the fort affords a noble prospect, especially as the greater part of the fine buildings have been erected there. On one side stands the Company's garden, in its full extent; on the other the fountains, the streams of which run down from the Table Hill through an opening, which is observable from the city and from all the harbour. This water is fine, and abundantly supplies the consumption of the inhabitants, as well as such vessels as touch at the Cape.

The men seemed to me to be in general well made, and the women pretty. I was amazed to see the latter dress with as much attention to the minutiae of elegance as the ladies in France; but they have neither their manners nor their graces. As the children are always suckled by female slaves, the familiarity which takes place between them has a great effect upon their manners and education. That of the men is still less attended to; if we except the children of the great people, who are sent to Europe for education. There are no other teachers of youth but writing-masters at the Cape.

The ladies in general play on the harpsichord; this is their only accomplishment. They are fond of singing, and particularly so of dancing; for this reason several balls every week are common. The officers of the ships which touch here, and which lie some time in the roads, often given them an opportunity of indulging in this pleasure. When I arrived, the governor generally gave a public ball every month, and the chief people of the town followed his example.

I was amazed to find neither a coffee-house nor a tavern, in a place where so many strangers arrive; but one may get lodgings in every private house. The usual charge for bed and board is a dollar a day; which is high enough, when we consider the moderate price of the productions of the country. While I resided here, butchers meat was very cheap. I have seen thirteen pounds of mutton sold for about sixpence sterling, an ox for twelve or fifteen rixdollars*, ten quarters of corn for fourteen or fifteen, and thus in proportion for other articles. During the war the price of every article was raised

* A rixdollar is about three shillings and nine pence sterling.

raised exorbitantly; and towards the conclusion of it forty-five rixdollars were given for a mean bag of potatoes, and above two shillings sterling for a small cabbage. The charge of board, however, was not advanced.

There are plenty of fish at the Cape. Among those most valued, the principal are the *rooman*, a red fish found in the bay of Fallo; and the *klepvis*, which has no scales, and which is taken on the rocks bordering the sea; the *steenbrasen*, the *stompneus*, and some others. These fine fish make a conspicuous figure at every good table. Oysters are a great rarity here, and there are none found any where but in the bay of Fallo. Eels are still more scarce. Crayfish I never saw; but the people eat sea-ears, which they call *klepkousen*.

In order to procure game, one must go many leagues up from the Cape. The usual kinds are the *steenbock*, the *duyker*, the *reebock*, the *gryfbock*, the *bontebok*, and all the different sorts of antelopes, concerning which I shall speak more at length in my description of quadrupeds. Hares, especially that small kind called the *down hare*, are found here in great plenty, but they have not the flavour of our hares.

There are partridges also of different sorts, smaller or larger, and more or less delicious than the European, found here; but the quail and the snipe do not materially differ from ours. They are never seen here but in their passage.

Notwithstanding what the enthusiasts of the Cape may say, I am ready to think that our fruits transplanted thither have greatly degenerated. The grapes alone appeared to me to be delicious; cherries are rare and bad; pears and apples are very little better, and soon spoil. The citrons, however, and the oranges, especially the kind called *naretyes*, are excellent: the figs are delicate and wholesome; but the small banana, or *pisang*, has a bad taste. Is it not wonderful that in so fine a country, and under so fine a sky, if we except a few dismal days, no indigenous fruits are to be found? Asparagus and artichokes are not produced at the Cape, but all the other articles of our kitchen-gardens in Europe seem now to be naturalized: they might be found here the whole year, did not the south-east wind, which is prevalent for
three

three months, dry the earth in such a manner as to render it unfit for every kind of cultivation; it blows so furiously, that it is necessary, in order to preserve plants, to inclose all the beds of a garden with close palisades made of young elms. The same method is followed with young trees; which, notwithstanding these precautions, never sprout out branches on the windward side; and always incline to the other, which gives them a dismal look: in general, they are very difficult to rear.

I have often witnessed the ravages committed by this wind. In so short a space as twenty-four hours the best stocked gardens look as if dug up, and swept. This wind continues from January to April at this extreme point of Africa, and reaches even a great way into the country. During my travels, it has sometimes thrown over all my carriages; and no other alternative has been left me but to fasten them to large bushes, to prevent them from being thrown over topfyturvy.

At the Cape the forerunner of this wind is a small white cloud, which at first attaches itself to the top of the Table Hill, on the side adjacent to the Devil's-Hill. The air then begins to turn cooler; in a little the cloud increases, and expands till it becomes so large as to cover all the top of the mountain: it is then a proverbial saying *that the mountain has put on its peruke*. The cloud, however, proceeds rapidly, on and hovers over the city: one would then suppose it was about to be laid under water and buried by a deluge; but, in proportion as it advances to the bottom of the mountain, it evaporates, and appears to be reduced to nothing. The heavens remain calm and serene, without any interruption; and the mountain only, for a very little, has a gloomy aspect, while it is deprived by that veil of the enlivening presence of the sun.

I have continued whole mornings in examining this phenomenon, without being able to fathom the cause of it; some time after, when I visited the Bay of Falso, on the opposite side of the mountain, I have often had the pleasure to see its commencement and progress. The wind at first announces itself very weakly, carrying slowly along with it a sort of fog, which appears to be detached from the surface of the sea. This being collected together

together, becomes condensed by the Table Hill towards the south, an obstacle which opposes it in its progress; and in order to overcome it, gradually rolling over itself, it ascends by its efforts to the top, and displays to the town that white cloud which announces the wind, which has already blown for several hours, in the harbour and its neighbourhood, towards the face of the Table Hill.

This kind of storm generally lasts three days: sometimes it continues, without remission, for a much longer time; often, also, it stops suddenly; and during the three months when it is prevalent, if it happens to cease several times in this way, it is a sure indication that great sickness will be the consequence.

Although this wind is not so very dangerous for shipping, there have been several instances of its proving hurtful to a great many. When it is very impetuous, prudence, the fear of accident, occasions their steering for the open sea; but when it collects no fog, it is not perceptible in the town, and blows only in the road. It is therefore the collecting of the fog, which, proceeding forward with great velocity, occasions these terrible hurricanes. It is very often impossible to pass the streets; and, although the care and attention with which doors and windows are kept shut is very great, the dust penetrates even into trunks and chests of drawers. But, whatever inconvenience attends this wind, it still is of great advantages to the town; it delivers it from mephitic vapours, occasioned by the filth which is naturally collected on the banks of the sea, by that which the inhabitants throw into it, and still more by the bloody remnants which the Company's butchers (who make no use of either the heads, feet, or intestines of the animals they kill) throw away, and leave at the doors of their shops; where, being gathered into heaps, they soon corrupt, infect the air and the inhabitants, and strengthen those epidemical diseases too frequent at the Cape in the season when the south-east wind has not been prevalent. The most dangerous and terrible complaint here is the sore throat. People of the stoutest constitutions often fall a sacrifice to it in the three or four days: it is so very violent, that they have barely time to counteract its effects by the aid of medicine.

The

The small pox is another scourge in all the colonies here. Till the arrival of the Europeans, this distemper was unknown; and since the Dutch have had possession of the Cape, it has been within a hair's breath of destruction. The first time it appeared, more than two-thirds of the inhabitants died. Its ravages, however, were still more fatal among the Hottentots; it appeared that this malady attacked them sooner than others; at present they are very subject to it.

As this disease was introduced at the Cape by some European vessels, the Company's surgeons are always sent to examine with the utmost care such ships as anchor in the roads. On the smallest appearance of infection, the crew are strictly prohibited from having any communication with the town or inhabitants; and an embargo is laid on the goods, no part of which, however trifling, is suffered to be brought on shore. Were it found out that a captain had concealed this disorder aboard his ship, he and his officers would be immediately degraded, and condemned to pay a very severe fine, if the vessel belonged to the Company. I include here the *officers*; because, as each of them is considered to be answerable for that part of the vessel which concerns him, it would be impossible to conceal the infection unless with the knowledge and general consent of the crew. Did the ship belong to any foreign power, confiscation would be inevitable.

The wet season generally sets in towards the end of April: and the rains are more plentiful and frequent in the town than any where else in the neighbourhood; which may be owing to the following reason:—At the Cape the north wind has the same effect with the south west in France: it carries the clouds along with it, which, passing over the town, are stopped by their impulse against the Table, Devil, and Lyon Hills. Constant rains prevail then at the Cape; whilst the adjoining places, to the distance of two miles around, have dry weather, and a sky perfectly serene. Sometimes they fall over all the space contained between Table Bay and the Bay of Falso, to the east of that enormous chain of mountains which reaches to the very extremity of Africa; whilst the eastern coast is clear and perfectly free from clouds. This is but a faint picture of what happens on the Coromandel and

Malabar coasts; except that this phenomenon is more surprising here, because it is nearer, and much more observable. Indeed, if two persons set out for the Bay of Falso, he who travels by the eastern side of the mountain, carries his umbrella with him, to defend him from the rain; but he who goes by the west side, takes it to shelter him from the sun beams.

Strangers are usually well received at the Cape by those who are in the Company's service, and by some other private people; but the English are adored, either because of the similarity between the manners of the two nations, or their very much affecting to be generous. It is an unquestionable fact, that, immediately upon their arrival, every one is more anxious than another to offer them lodging. In less than eight days every thing becomes English in the house upon which they have fixed their choice; and the master, the mistress, and even the children, soon copy their manners. At table, for instance, the knife is employed for the office of the fork.

Of any nation, the French are the least respected; the citizens, particularly, cannot bear them; and this hatred is often carried such a length, that I have heard the inhabitants say, they had much rather be captured by the English, than be indebted for their safety to the arms of the French nation. Such conversation I at first looked upon as exaggeration; and thought, on the contrary, that these people formed to themselves an illusion at pleasure, to diminish in their own view the merit of those services which France then did them, and to get rid privately of the burden laid on them by gratitude. However this may be, I am still of the mind that the French would have had the greatest cause to complain of this colony, had not some persons of distinction, whose prudence checked the murmurs of the populace, made some recompence for the injustice of this enmity, by those obliging services and essential aids which the circumstances of the time made a part of their duty. These worthy men were not forgot by the French ministry, who honoured one of them with a letter of thanks from his sovereign. Who is there who has not had opportunity to praise the noble and disinterested behaviour of Mr Boers, the fiscal? and who is there who will not always cherish the
the

the remembrance of it in his mind? For my part, I pay him the purest and the most sincere homage; and may this truth, which I cannot conceal, preserve the remembrance of his name as much as I know it will offend his modesty.

DEPARTURE FOR SALDANHA BAY.

THE intelligence of the rupture between England and Holland, which had got to the Cape before our arrival—and the still more positive intelligence brought by us, that the enemy were exerting themselves with the greatest vigilance—made us apprehensive that we should soon have a visit from them. Government therefore considering that no time ought to be lost, and that the ships which were anchored in Table Bay should immediately take shelter in that of Saldanha, where they might be in greater safety from the English, an order was given for that purpose to all the captains. As this event appeared favourable to my designs; I proposed to depart with the fleet; and Mr Vangenep, who had the command of the *Middelburg*, having been kind enough to offer me the best accommodation his vessel afforded, and every assistance necessary to enable me to be benefited from my intended researches, as soon as we should reach the Bay, I accepted his friendship with equal readiness and thankfulness. Ordering my baggage, therefore, to be embarked, we set sail on the 10th of May, in company with other four vessels; and next morning anchored in Saldanha Bay.

This bay extends in an oblique direction, towards the right of its mouth, about seven or eight leagues; and on the left side of the entrance there is a small creek, called *Hoetjes Bay*, in which ten or twelve ships of war might anchor on an excellent bottom: vessels of a less burden might penetrate much farther, and even to the little isle of *Schaapen Eyland*, which would afford them very good shelter.

shelter. The water found in this bay is inferior, indeed, to that of the Cape, but during the bad monsoons it changes its nature, and becomes excellent. The peasants in the neighbourhood furnish such ships as remain in the Bay with provisions of every sort, at a much lower rate than they could be procured at in the town; so that a vessel from Europe, outward bound, if hindered by the south-east wind, which is unfavourable for making Table Bay, may easily gain that of Saldanha, and be certain of finding there every sort of refreshment in great plenty. Near to this place the Company have a post of a few men, commanded by a corporal; who, the moment he perceives a vessel in the entrance of the Bay sends an express over land, to give intelligence to the governor.

The *cachalot**, which is a kind of whale which the Dutch call *noord kaaper*, is always to be seen in great abundance sporting in the basin. I have often fired balls at them, when they erected their bodies upright above the surface of the water, but I never thought that they made the smallest impression. We found an amazing number of rabbits in the small isle of *Schaapen Eyland*: it became a warren to us, and was an excellent retreat for the seamen.

There is abundance of game of every kind in the neighbourhood.—The chief kinds are small antelopes, and all those which I have already mentioned. Partridges and hares are met with here also; but the difficulty of continually ascending or descending among the sands with which this place is bordered, makes it a very fatiguing and laborious task to pursue them. Panthers are very general here, but they are not so fierce as those of other parts of Africa; because, getting a ready supply of food in the game, they are never pinched by hunger.

A few days after my arrival, the commander of the soldiers who were on this station having invited me to go out on a hunting party with him, we set out next morning. Though we saw great plenty of game, we caught none; but about evening, having accidentally separated, as if providence wished to make me soon acquainted with those

* The *cachalot* was generally known under the name of the spermaceti whale, till Mr Pennant very properly made a distinction, by borrowing its name from the French. T.

those dangers which I had come so far in quest of, I received, for the first time, a lesson I little looked for, and which I am convinced would have made more than one brave citizen shudder.—The shots which I had fired here and there having awaked a small antelope, my dog set out in pursuit of it; and, stopping by a very large bush, began to bark, running continually about it. Imagining that the antelope had taken refuge thither, I ran up to it, expecting to be able to kill it; my presence and voice seemed greatly to increase the courage of my dog. I expected every moment that the antelope would appear; but, vexed at not seeing it come out, I penetrated into the very heart of the thicket, beating on every side with my gun, to clear away the branches which intercepted my passage. But what words can express the stupor and terror which froze the very blood in my veins, when, having come to the centre of the bush, I saw, staring me full in the face, a fierce and monstrous panther: its attitude after perceiving me, its flaming eye-balls fixed upon me, its neck stretched out, its jaws half extended, and its hollow roaring, all seemed to forebode my destruction. I indeed already conceived that I was devoured; but the cool courage of my dog preserved my life. By keeping the animal at bay, and making him hesitate between rage and fear, I got time to return quietly to the borders of the thicket; whilst my admirable dog kept close by his master, determined no doubt to perish along with him. When I got to plain ground, I made towards the public road with all expedition, looking behind me every now and then. Hearing several reports of a musket at a distance fired, at certain intervals, I concluded that they came from my companion, who was in quest of me. As it was now night I had no anxiety to rejoin him, and permitted him to fire on at his pleasure; he however arrived, though very late. His astonishment at seeing me perfectly safe and sound, was only equalled by his joy; for he acknowledged that, from the manner in which my dog barked, he thought I had been engaged with an hyæna, or a tyger; and that, not hearing me return an answer when he fired his gun, he supposed that I was torn to pieces. This adventure, which I recounted to him very particularly made us both laugh very heartily;

tily ; but what he mentioned to me respecting the course I ought to have taken in this rencontre, made me regret exceedingly that I did not fire upon the animal. As I was but a novice in the country of these ferocious animals, this was the first I had ever beheld so near me, and I was altogether a stranger to the manner I should proceed with a panther. In this way I amused my leisure hours, and prepared myself insensibly for still greater difficulties.

We went frequently to the Isle of Schaapen, to kill rabbits. In one of these expeditions, which had formerly afforded us much pleasure, we had a very narrow escape from destruction. A whale rose very suddenly near our boat, and frightened us a good deal. It was so close by us, that fearing lest, when it dived again, it should upset the boat, and sink it by its enormous weight, the sailors cast themselves into the sea ; but the man at the helm turned round the boat so expeditiously, that we got clear of the monster. This fish, which darted more than twelve feet above the water, besprinkled us all when it dived ; and our boat got such a violent shock, that it was very near upset. Had it not been for the good management of our pilot, not a single soul of us would have escaped death.

This kind of whale is commonly from sixty to eighty feet in length, and sometimes more. It frequently emerges from the sea with half its body ; and when this huge body falls back again, it occasions a noise as loud as a cannon report.

One evening, at supper, our vessel got a shock which made her reel in so remarkable a manner, that, ignorant of the cause, we got up from table with great haste, and ran upon deck. The alarm was soon general throughout the crew. Vangenep supposed that we had driven on our anchors, and that we were striking on some rock ; but observing, by the situation of the other ships, that we had not stirred from our place, it was concluded that there must have been some other cause of that extraordinary motion, and our consternation was redoubled. Having attempted in vain to find out the cause, we at length observed a whale, which, springing up before us, had, in diving again, passed between our

two cables, which crossed one another. As the animal happened to be impeded by its tail, which is very broad, the violent efforts it made to loose itself had shaken, and even at this time shook, our vessel. The people immediately got into the boats, and seized their harpoons; but the darkness of the night unfortunately prevented them from taking the necessary manœuvres to kill it; and the instant when the boats were approaching, it got disentangled. Every person was vexed at this disappointment. For my part, I regretted it much, until fate enabled me afterwards to get one into my power. When the danger was over, we again sat down to table; and, as a false alarm is always followed by the liveliest joy, we entertained ourselves in joking one another, and in reciprocally painting the different appearances which fear had on each of the guests, sparing none.

The vigilance of Vangenep, and the alacrity with which he gave his orders on this occasion, were to me an infallible evidence that he was himself under great uneasiness; but he suffered nothing to appear: so true is it that the coolness of a commander conceals danger, and supports those who are under him. Such should be the behaviour of a good sea officer, even to the last moment. The apprehension soon becomes general, when the crew notice any marks of terror visible in the countenance of their captain. I then recollected the example which I had seen of this, in crossing the Line, when we shamefully permitted ourselves to be cannonaded by a poultry privateer.

At the mouth of Saldanha Bay there is also a small isle in sight, called *Dassen Eyland*, or the Isle of Marmots. I do not recollect if any of these animals were ever got here at any former period, but I saw none. There is a tradition known by all travellers informing that a Danish ship, being hindered by adverse winds from entering the roads at the Cape, took shelter in this bay; and that, after continuing here some time, the captain died, when his crew interred him in this little island, and erected a tomb to his memory.

As often as I passed this isle, on the way to *Schaapen Eyland*, my ears were assailed by a hollow sound which
had

had in it something very dismal and frightful. Having spoken of it to my captain, he told me that, if I was anxious, or if it would afford me the least satisfaction, he would land there, especially as he himself was anxious to see the Danish tomb. The next morning therefore he gave orders to this effect, and we set out.

The nearer we approached, this hollow noise still more attracted our curiosity, and the sea breaking with great force upon the rocks which constitute a rampart round this isle, still increased the murmuring sound, the cause of which we had not been able to find out.

Having at length arrived, we were forced to wade through the water; as the surf was so great that the boat could not come near enough the shore, where we were constantly covered with the spray: but, having at length clambered up the rocks, with a good deal of difficulty and danger, we saw such a spectacle as never, perhaps, appeared to mortal eye. There suddenly arose from the whole surface of the island an impenetrable cloud, which formed, about forty feet above our heads, an immense canopy, or rather a sky, consisting of birds of every species, and of all colours: cormorants, sea-gulls, sea-swallows, pelicans, and I imagine all the winged tribe of this part of Africa, were here assembled. All their voices mixed together, and modified according to their different species, occasioned such a horrid music, that I was almost constantly obliged to cover my head, to save it from being torn to pieces, and to give a little ease to my ears. The alarm which we occasioned was so much the more general among these inconceivable legions of birds, as we chiefly gave disturbance to the females who were then sitting. They had nests, eggs, and young to defend. They were like a parcel of furious harpies let loose among us; and their cries almost deafened us. They often flew so very near us, that they flapped their wings in our faces; and although we fired our guns repeatedly, we could not frighten them: it seemed impossible to disperse this cloud. We could not stir a single step without crushing either their eggs or their young, so that the earth was completely overspread with them.

The caverns and holes of the rocks were possessed by *phoca* and *morses*, a sort of sea calves and sea lions.

Among

Among others, we killed one of the *morses*, which was of an astonishing size.

The lesser crevices answered as places of retreat for penguins, which swarm here more than the other kinds. This bird, which is about two feet long, does not carry its body in the same way with others; it stands erect on its two feet, which gives it an appearance of gravity, so much the more ridiculous, as the wings, on which there are no feathers, hang carelessly down on each side: it never makes use of them but in swimming. As we came nearer to the middle of the island, we met a vast number of troops of them. Keeping firm and perpendicular on their legs, these animals never put themselves to any trouble to let us pass; they rather more closely surrounded the mausoleum, and appeared as if resolved to prevent us from coming near it. All the neighbourhood was entirely surrounded with them. Nature had done more for the plain tomb of the poor Danish captain, than what the imagination of poets goes far in search of, and what the chisel of our artists performs at a vast expence: the hideous owl, however well sculptured in our churches, has not half so dead and melancholy an air as the penguin. The doleful cries of this animal, together with those of the sea calf, left on my mind a kind of gloom, which inclined me very much for the tender sensations of sadness and grief. I settled my eyes for some time on this last asylum of an unfortunate traveller, and honoured his remains with the tribute of a sigh. This monument, raised no doubt in haste, afforded nothing remarkable: it was of an oblong shape, three feet high, and built, without any mortar, of pieces of the rock surrounding the island. I should have been pleased to search the interior part of this tomb, as it perhaps held, together with the dismal remains of the captain, the history of his death, or some information about his family and country. Had I been by myself I should have presumed to disturb his ashes; but before Dutch sailors I was very much upon my guard not even to propose it. Respect for the dead is among them carried to the utmost height. With an unpleasant eye they would have seen me lay my hands upon this solitary and peaceful tomb; and, as they are superstitious to an extreme, if any accident had afterwards happened

happened the ship, they would no doubt have ascribed the cause of it to me. I therefore prudently kept quiet, but, on leaving the island, I reserved to myself in my own mind a right of some day returning thither.

We loaded our boat with animals of various kinds which we had caught. The penguins were not neglected; and we extracted abundance of oil from them for our lamps.

The sailors also gathered a vast number of eggs, which supplied us for several days with food that we found to be delicious, and which relieved us very seasonably from being obliged to feed upon the dry and too uniform ship provisions.

I shall only add to this digression, which I was led to consider as interesting, a few words as to the sea lion and the sea calf. Many authors have mentioned them under denominations so very different, and with descriptions so false, that nothing can indeed be collected from them. As to the first of these monsters, I can only say, that I never saw any of those trunks half a foot long, which, as we are assured, hang down from the upper jaw of the male. As to the second, to which the Dutch have given this name, it is the same animal with that shewn three or four years ago in one of the shops of the *Palais-Royal*, and which the people who exhibited it called a *sea tyger*; while another of the same species was shewn, a few doors distant, under a different designation. It was in this manner that, fifteen years ago, the simple credulous Parisians, who would not have stirred a single step to see a camel, ran in crowds to the fair of St Germain, to stare with amazement at the *gangan*, which was nothing else but a camel, shewn by an impostor under that name. Such impositions are less ludicrous, as they deserve to be condemned. They have the effect to propagate ignorance among the lazy inhabitants of the banks of the Seine, who, when they give away their money to gratify their vain curiosity, ought also to take care that it contribute towards their instruction.

We had only been three months in this bay, and I had already become acquainted with all its environs. I had been so very attentive to my chief object, that even in that short time I had got together a large and valuable collection

lection of birds, shells, insects, madrepores, &c. But an unlucky event, which happened soon after, had nearly stripped me of all the fruits of my labour, my researches, and fatiguing excursions.

By an express which reached us over land from the Governor, we learned that Mr Suffrein, after the affair of St Jago, had come to the Cape, and that another French squadron was hourly to be expected. This express brought orders at same time to the *Held-Woltemaade*, the vessel by which I had come from Europe, to set out immediately for Ceylon, for which place she was bound. My poor old captain* therefore set sail, early in August. This unfortunate ship pursued me where ever I went; and I imagine it was written in the book of Fate, that she should not leave me till I was ruined. When I considered our ridiculous engagement with the privateer, I plainly foresaw that the *Held-Woltemaade* would be no sooner observed by the English, than taken; which indeed afterwards was the case. Scarcely had she begun to set out on her voyage, when she fell in with commodore Johnstone's squadron, to which she was an easy prey. This capture was the means of all our following misfortunes. By means of the shameful imprudence of the crew, Johnstone, having obtained the information he wished for, advanced directly towards us, and appeared at the mouth of the bay under French colours. Every person thought that the vessels we saw were the combined fleet which we expected: but a cutter, which was a little way ahead, having hoisted an English flag, fired a broadside at us, and this was followed by a general discharge from all the other ships. Being inferior in numbers, our people could not maintain the conflict, no other resource was therefore left us but to cut our cables, and to run the vessels ashore. We all, therefore, left them; and every one studied his own safety by flight. Disorder and confusion having soon overspread every quarter; the unlucky vessels were given up to the most dreadful pillage; every one attempted to carry off what he liked best. Our captain set fire to his ship, but the English arrived time enough to prevent the rest from being run ashore and burnt. The dread of being pursued, taken, or killed by
the

the enemy, made the sailors, with the utmost expedition, pursue their way to the Cape. Having twenty leagues of sand to traverse, before they could get to the town, many of them were however discouraged. These wretched people had so overloaded themselves, that they were obliged to leave the half of their effects upon the road. They were seen spread around, and the different roads which they had taken were covered with them. I was unluckily out on a hunting party at the time; but having heard the noise of the guns, I naturally supposed that some entertainment was given by our squadron; and I hastened back to share in it. When I came to the downs, what a sight presented itself to my view! The Middelburg blew up, and in an instant the sea and sky were filled with burning fragments. Thus had I the piercing mortification to see my collections, my fortune, my projects, and all my hopes, ascend to the middle regions, and evaporate into smoke.

The English, however, still continued their fire towards the Downs, and pursued those stragglers whom avarice had kept too long aboard of the ships. Of five prisoners, in our ship, four threw themselves into the water, on seeing their country's flag, and swam safe to their own fleet; the fifth preferred going on shore with our people. Observing him upon the Downs, about ten or twelve paces from the place where I stood, I immediately recognized him; and as I interrogated him in his own language, in the best way I could, as to the dreadful catastrophe which had happened, a cannon bullet, which carried away his head, prevented me from receiving a reply. Another bullet, from the same broadside, did the same execution with a large dog, which seemed to be looking after its master, and which was running up towards me with a wild and terrified look. The effects which these two bullets produced making me apprehensive of a third, I instantly left my station, and sought shelter on the other side of the Downs.

The reader may easily conceive what my situation must have been after this adventure. Supposing that I did not incline to go to the Cape to ask pecuniary assistance, and to add to the number of the unhappy victims who had escaped from the fire and the sword of the enemy,
insensible

insensible to this scene of horror, in which I should not have run any risque, since no advantage was to be expected from it; without title, without rank, and without commission; alone, absent from my friends, who in imagination appeared before me; two thousand miles from my wife, my children, and my adopted country; in wild regions, without the hopes of getting even a calm and secure retreat; having no other resources but my musquet, ten ducats in my pocket, and the thin dress which I then had on me—what course could I follow, and what could I expect was to be the consequence? All these ideas rushed into my mind at once, and I perceived the tears trickle along my cheeks. In this miserable situation I turned my eyes to the shore; but I there observed that the conquerors, who were following the fugitives, would have my life in their hands, and by a single discharge of their muskets liberate me from all my miseries. That moment, therefore, I conceived a barbarous wish, and for the first time found my heart steeled with ferocity.

Soon however regaining the use of my reason, and reflecting upon my youth, which afforded me a consoling support in my own strength, I at last resolved, and began to be somewhat easier as to my fate.

It occurred to me that a planter, whom I had frequently seen in my excursions, and who lived only about four leagues distant, would perhaps permit me to reside at his house till I should procure assistance from my family in Europe. I went therefore, to his solitary dwelling, and entreated his friendship, whilst my misfortune was painted in my countenance. Upon hearing my request, the tender-hearted Slaber stretched out his arms, and, taking me by the hand, introduced me to his family. Next morning I followed the example of the preserving swallow, whose nest has been destroyed by some ruthless hand; and, not without regret, began to form a new collection.

In a few days after we learned from the Cape, that all the Captains had been broke, except Vangenep, the only one who had blown up his ship; by which great exploit I was almost completely ruined.

When they departed for the bay, they were all ordered to blow up their ships, if they should be attacked in a
VOL. I. D situation

situation where they could not defend themselves; and they had got a *Hoeker*, or small vessel, which drew little water, and which could get up into the bay much farther than any other, to answer as a general magazine, where they might keep the ropes, sails, and rigging, of all the fleet. This part of the order was executed; and if the captain of the *Hoeker* had set fire to it, as he was expressly ordered, he would have thrown the English into confusion, and probably obliged them to abandon our ships, for want of ropes necessary to carry them along with them. As it was much nearer the bottom of the bay than the rest of the ships, whilst the English were keeping up a constant fire, and seizing the vessels, he had much more time than was required to blow up his vessel. He not only neglected to take any steps for this purpose; but he left the vessel, in order to save himself, upon the appearance of a cutter which came to attack him: he did not even think of putting fire to it; and, by a contradiction almost inconceivable, and which seems nearly akin to madness, he burnt and reduced to ashes a fine house, situated at the extremity of the bay, in a place where the water was so shallow that even boats could scarcely come near it. On this account he was pursued by Mr Heufke, the proprietor, who was satisfied that the captain would at least be obliged to pay his damages.

Vangenep was the only captain who, when we arrived in the bay, above all things, seriously began to take such steps as were indispensibly necessary for executing with rigour the general orders given to all. We had filled every corner of our vessel with tow dipped in oil, with faggots, pitch, and combustible substances of every kind. His brother captains were therefore more blame worthy, as their being three months idle in this bay had afforded sufficient leisure to be in readiness. We arrived here on the 11th of May; and it was about the middle of August when this disaster befel us.

The officers and sailors who belonged to our vessels, who had run to the town in a tumultuous manner, soon circulated the news of our misfortune. The fiscal, finding that I did not return with the rest, and hearing no tidings, made every possible enquiry, and at length found the retreat I had made choice of. He soon after paid me a visit; and

and I sincerely regretted that I had so soon lost the confidence with which he had inspired me. I informed him of the dismal situation to which I found myself reduced by the general mishap, and of the dreadful distress into which I was thrown by the loss of every thing that I possessed in the world. I told him the resolution I had taken to remain with honest Slaber until I should receive letters from my relations; and of doing what I could in the mean while to repair the loss of my collections, and to renew my researches in natural history. Mr Boers heard me very calmly, and without interrupting me.—But why cannot I here perpetuate, in golden letters, his tender reproaches, and the pressing invitations which he tendered me to follow him? Without assuming any consequence, without haughtiness, or the impertinent verbosity of our European patrons, but with that open and real goodness of heart which looks on mankind with the eye of benevolence, and always considers those whom it protects as meriting kindness—"Sir," said he, when I had concluded my apology, "always keep in mind that you have been recommended to me. The moment I see you oppressed by misfortunes, is also the time, when I, in my turn, ought to deserve the confidence of those friends who have relied upon me: I will therefore never betray them. My house, my table, and every assistance I can afford you, are at your service. Take courage; make new preparations; return to your original scheme; and do not defer to begin your intended travels, by waiting for precarious accounts from Europe. I will furnish you with every thing necessary for all your exigencies. Accept my offer—I must and I will have it to be so."

It was in such affecting language that this man of sensibility addressed me. To refuse would have hurt him too much; and I accepted his kind offer. To this generous friend, therefore, I was indebted for the invaluable advantage of being able to set about my preparations for this expedition, to which I had long looked forward with delight, and to make ready for the ruinous expence with which it was probable it would be attended. I cannot look back upon his kindness without pleasure; and I must always entertain a grateful remembrance of it. With similar sensations I recal to mind what Mr Hacker, the

lieutenant-governor, did for me, at the different times when I went to the Cape; and I must also return thanks to Mr Gordon, the commander of the troops, for the services he had in his power to render me, and in which he was not deficient. His curious observations published in Holland by Allaman, are valued; and I confess that I am particularly obliged to him for a number of valuable details, which I would have perhaps forgot, had it not been for the instructions and advices he gave me before I set out for the interior parts of the country, into which he himself had made some journeys.

I asked leave to spend two or three weeks more at Saldanha, in order that I might repair, if possible, part of that loss which the English had occasioned me. As I knew not whether I should afterwards have an opportunity of revisiting that fatal spot, I wished at least to get such objects as I was well assured I could not find in any other place. I knew the ground so well, and I had passed over it in so many directions, that, I may almost, say, I had only to lay my hand upon them; for, before the tragical accident which happened our vessels, I purchased a horse, and engaged a Hottentot, who conducted me to the most private recesses. My host himself, as well as his two sons, assisted me greatly in my researches: on the least sign, they anticipated my wishes; and I might have almost said that they were under my command. I never beheld these worthy people without astonishment, mixed with admiration. Besides these, the good Slaber had also three daughters, whose persons and figure were really very agreeable. All the family made a noble appearance; they were all of them six feet high.

I improved to the utmost of my power, the two weeks granted me by friendship, with so much difficulty; and all my time was divided between shells, plants, and hunting: the latter, above all, which was my ruling passion, continually exposed me to the greatest dangers; and acquired me a reputation for courage, which was circulated at least ten leagues round about.

Having one evening returned very early, I found waiting for me at our house one of the inhabitants, named Smit, a person with whom I was not acquainted. He had come to request our assistance against a panther, which,

which, having for some time taken up its abode in that canton, carried off regularly, every night, some of the cattle; and, as his proposal was very agreeable, I readily consented to it. Happy at having an opportunity of hunting this animal methodically, I trusted I should be able to revenge myself for the terror which one of the same species had occasioned to me in Saldanha Bay, before mentioned.

Having resolved to set out next morning, we engaged some young men in the neighbourhood to join us. Remarking that they did not agree with a good grace, I attempted to make the most timid ashamed; and this gave a kind of spur to the rest. When about to set out, we collected all the dogs we could find; each armed himself cap-a-pie; and, when properly equipped, we all separated, as if we had been about to give an assault. To get a few hours rest, and make ready for the fatigues of the following day, I threw myself on my bed; but impatience and pleasure prevented me from closing my eye-lids. By day-break I reached the plain, with my escort, where Smit and a few friends were waiting for us. We amounted in all to eighteen hunters; our pack of dogs was of the same number: and we were told that a panther; had carried off a sheep during the night preceding.

I had loaded one of the barrels of my gun with very large shot, and the other with small bullets; besides this, I had a carabine loaded with balls, which was carried by my Hottentot, who followed me. The country being very open, we observed only a few detached bushes here and there; but we were forced to examine very cautiously all those which we found in our road.

Having searched more than an hour, we found the sheep, only one half of which had been devoured by the panther; and we were now convinced, by this mark, that the animal was not far distant, and that it could not escape us. A few minutes after, indeed, our dogs, which till then had done nothing but range through the fields without any order, collected themselves all of a sudden; and, pressing together, rushed forwards two hundred paces from us, to a very large bush, where they began with all their might to howl and bark.

Dismounting from my horse, and running towards the bush, I stationed myself upon a small eminence, at the distance of fifty paces; but looking behind me, I observed dismay painted in the countenances of all my companions. One of my host's sons, John Slaber, a colossus six feet high, came, however, and stood close by me; and said that he would rather lose his life than desert me. By his disordered looks, and the palpitation of his heart, I concluded that the poor youth depended little on his own courage, and I observed that he had need of some resolute person to revive his drooping spirits. Whatever his terror might have been, I am of opinion that he thought himself in more safety near me, than in the midst of his dastardly companions, whom we perceived straggling through the field, and keeping at a very respectful distance.

They had all cautioned me, in case I should get near enough to the animal to be heard, that I ought not to cry *saa, saa*, because these words would make the tiger furious; and that he would spring upon the person who had pronounced them sooner than upon any of the rest: but as I was in the open field, and in a spot where I could not be embarrassed, I repeatedly cried out *saa, saa*, both to encourage the dogs, and to drive the animal from its hold; but all my efforts were in vain: the animal was as much terrified as the dogs; the former not daring to come forth; nor the latter to enter the bush. Among the dogs, however, I perceived some mastiffs, on which I might have depended, had their strength been equal to their courage. My bitch alone, the least in the pack, always appeared at the head of the rest; and alone penetrated a little way into the bush. As she knew my voice, she was a good deal animated, and on that account became much fiercer.

Mean while, the tiger set up a terrible howling; and I imagined every moment that I saw him springing forward. The dogs, on the smallest motion which he made, retreated precipitately; and scampered away as fast as their legs could carry them. Some musket shots, however, fired at random, at length determined the animal; he instantly leaped up: and this sudden apparition was a signal for every body to decamp. John Slaber himself, who, formed like a Hercules, might have grappled with
the

the animal, and strangled him in his arms in an instant' became confused; and, being overcome with terror, fled towards the rest, and abandoned me to my fate. I was therefore left without any attendant except my Hottentot; and the tiger, to gain another bush, passed at the distance of fifty paces, which gave us an opportunity of saluting him in his passage with three discharges of our muskets.

He took shelter in a bush much smaller, and neither so high nor so thick as that which he had quitted. I observed some traces of blood, which gave me reason to think I had wounded him; and the redoubled fury of the dogs convinced me that my conjecture was right. Some of my people then approached me; but the greater part of them had entirely disappeared.

We harassed the animal for above an hour, and fired more than forty shots into the bush, till at last being wearied, and losing all patience at this sport, which produced nothing, I mounted my horse, and with great precaution went to the side opposite to the dogs; thinking that, while his attention was engaged in defending himself from them, I might easily surprise him behind. The event shewed that I was not deceived: I soon saw him squatted down, and making use of his fore paws to defend himself from my little bitch; for she came so near him, constantly barking, as almost to be within his reach. After taking a proper aim, I discharged my carabine, which I immediately dropped, in order that I might lay hold of my double-barrelled fuzee, which I carried at the bow of my saddle. This precaution, however, was unnecessary; the animal did not appear; and, after I had fired, I saw nothing more of him. Though I was sure that I had hit him, it would have been very imprudent to penetrate immediately into the thicket. Not hearing him, I imagined that he was dangerously wounded; and calling out to such of my brother sportsmen as were collected together—"My friends," said I, "let us all advance towards him, in a close line afront; if he is alive still, and makes his appearance, our pieces, discharged at once, must destroy him. What hazard can we run?" On hearing these words, they all answered with one voice; but their answer was in the negative. In short,

short, nobody relished my proposal. Fired with indignation at their timidity, "Friend," said I to my Hottentot, who was as much animated as his master, the animal must either be dead, or extremely ill. Get on "horseback, come forward in the same manner as I did, "and endeavour to discover what situation he is in: "leave me to guard the entrance; and, if he attempts "to escape, I expect I shall be able to dispatch him. "We may finish the business, without the aid of these "poltroons." No sooner had he entered, than he called out to me, that he saw the tiger extending at his length, without any seeming motion; and that he imagined he was dead. In order that he might be certain of it, he fired another shot; upon which I ran up, my whole body being agitated with gladness and exultation, while my courageous Hottentot shared in my transports. Our strength being redoubled with joy, we dragged the animal to the open plain; and, when displayed to view, he appeared to be of an enormous size. I then began to take his dimensions with the utmost exactness: I turned him over and over again, in every direction; and examined him with the greatest attention. I reviewed him with a kind of pride. This was my first attempt; and the tiger, which was a male one, happened to be prodigiously large. From the tip of his muzzle, to the extremity of his tail, he measured seven feet two inches; and in circumference two feet ten. In him I saw all the characters of the panther, so well described by Buffon; but in the settlements here he is only known by the name of the tiger. This appellation has become prevalent; though there are no real tigers in all this part of Africa, and though there is a very great difference between these two animals. The Hottentots call him *garou gama*; that is to say, the spotted lion.

In the settlements near the Cape, the panther in general, is much more dreaded than the lion. The latter never makes his approach without giving warning by terrible roarings. He himself gives the signal for defence; as if he shewed greater confidence in his strength, or made his attack in a more noble manner. On the contrary, the other unites treachery to ferocity; he approaches always without making any noise, glides along with great dexterity,

dexterity, takes every advantage, and, springing upon his prey, carries it off before any one suspects he is near.

Afterwards I had frequent opportunities of seeing several of these animals; as well as of another species, called by the Dutch *luypar*, or leopard of the French; and a third species, smaller still, called the *cat tyger*, and by Buffon the *offelot*, of these I shall speak hereafter.

After finishing my observations on my panther, and having drawn a figure of him, we began to take off his skin; and my timid companions gradually approached, when they perceived us quietly at work. The reader may easily conceive how much they were ashamed, and what marks of confusion were displayed in each of their countenances. Ought they not to have blushed before a stranger, who, engaged for the first time with a ferocious animal, had remained firm, and shewn more courage than they, though all of them had been born and educated, as one may say, amidst the monsters of Africa?

When I had slayed the animal, my Hottentot wrapped himself up in the skin; and, after saluting my bold fellow hunters, we returned to our lodgings.

We marched in triumph, attended by several dogs, whose masters had first disappeared; but they would not come near us. The tiger's skin struck them with great awe; and when my Hottentot, to terrify them more, turned round, making a kind of motion towards them, they run back with as much speed as if the tiger had been at their heels; which afforded a good deal of diversion.

The particulars of this expedition were soon spread abroad. Throughout the whole country I was said to be a man of courage; and even those who had supported me so *nobly* began to be of the same mind. A planter, with whom I was not acquaint, and who lived at the distance of four leagues, requested me to assist his son to destroy a panther, which had committed several depredations in the neighbourhood.

After experiencing so much danger in my first attempt, I was not very fond of engaging in a second. I therefore begged leave to be excused; being determined never more to expose myself to the hazard of becoming a victim to such base desertion. "Go," said I to the messenger, "tell your master that I did not come to this
"country

“country in order to exterminate the race of the tigers. I should be very ill repaid for my services, since none but poltroons would derive benefit from them. If chance expose me to such rencounters, I can combat alone; I want none of your assistance, and I will lend mine to nobody.” Success had thus inflamed my pride, and I supposed that I was at least another Theseus.

I had, with great impropriety, confounded people of whom I was ignorant, with those who had given me so much cause to find fault with their conduct. This invitation had come from a person named Louis Karste, with whom I had afterwards an opportunity of being acquainted; and I repented that I had entertained so much prejudice against his children. They convinced me that they were incapable of behaving in a cowardly manner in the moment of danger; and I have myself witnessed the effects of their intrepidity.

The period to which I had confined myself, when I left Mr Boers, was now nearly spent; the proper season for prosecuting my journey into the interior parts of the country was fast approaching; and I had many things to get ready. I therefore bade my good friend Slaber adieu, and all his family, whom I left with much regret. Being delivered from all my cares, embarrassments, and uneasiness, I looked towards Saldanha Bay for the last time, and proceeded on my way back to the Cape.

RETURN FROM SALDANHA BAY TO THE CAPE.

MR Boers was looking for me; and immediately upon my arrival, I took up my lodging in his house, where I got every thing that could flatter my wishes, and that friendly attention which the insolent pride of the rich sells at so dear a rate in other countries. He anticipated me with respect to the preparations necessary for my journey; and begged that I would

would now begin to think of them. Upon this occasion I formed a more intimate connection with Mr Gordon, the commander of the troops, who thought my intended enterprise rather too hazardous; especially at a time when the Caffres were at war with the Dutch planters, and consequently with the Hottentots: and, though he approved of my plan, he did not conceal the dangers to which I should be exposed in the execution of it. What he related concerning the risks which he had run in attempting a like project, served only to redouble my ardour: and I supposed that I would be proof against all those misfortunes, which he took delight in exhibiting to my view; and which, I must confess, were far from being flattering.

As my people were occupied in making ready my baggage, I examined, with particular attention, the city and its neighbourhood.

I repeatedly visited the Table and Lion Mountains. Though the former, as seen from the bay, seems to reach to the city, I found, however, that it was above a league from it.

The foot of this mountain is overspread with a great number of broken pieces of rock; which appear to have at one time formed a part of it, and to have been afterwards broken off: the base consists of pure granite, and to the very summit it seems to be alternately composed of horizontal strata of granite and earth. By the measurement given by M. de la Caille, it rises three thousand six hundred feet above the level of the sea. A person cannot ascend it but by the deep fissure, through which those streams flow that supply the fountains of the town with water; and even this route is very difficult, especially towards the top, where the fissure becomes much narrower, and rises almost perpendicularly. It is necessary to clamber above two hours, before one can reach the summit; where there is a very extensive plain, full of enormous rocks, heaped together in confusion, and interspersed with different kinds of shrubs. They resemble the ruins of an immense city. Time and conspiring elements seem to have destroyed their projecting parts, which gives them a very circular appearance. I have seen some pieces of quartz as round as those pebbles
are

which are frequently found on the sand by the banks of rivers.

Near the middle of the plain there is a muddy lake, from which those streams which reach the Cape flow through the fissure already mentioned. It is from three to four hundred paces round: near it I killed a great number of snipes. I could not find whether this water was produced by a spring, or by the fogs and the rains; but I found that the mountain was intersected by a number of fissures, which, like so many aqueducts, in different places distribute the water from this basin, and fertilize the plantations scattered here and there at some distance near its bottom.

Vultures of that species called *perchnopteros* frequent the Table Mountain; but the south-east wind frequently obliges them to quit the mountain: and it sometimes blows with such fury, that it throws them down into the streets of the Cape, where they are killed with sticks. A kind of baboon apes, which the Dutch call *barvians*, are found here also. It is known by every body that they are great thieves. They disperse themselves over the different plantations, and climb the garden walls, in order to steal fruit; but not with that preparation and fine order which Kolben has made the subject of a ridiculous and childish tale. When the sky is serene and pure, the Piquet Mountains, which are thirty leagues distant, may be seen from the top of the Table Mountain: notwithstanding this distance, they appear to surpass the height of the latter.

When people who for the first time visit this mountain, are engaged in the hollow fissure of which I have spoken, they imagine themselves attacked by a shower of rain: though the weather be fine, it really rains to them. This proceeds from the particles of water, which, dropping constantly from the rocks above, and falling upon those below, are broken by their fall, and converted into a kind of rain, which becomes the finer the nearer one comes to the bottom of the mountain. This rain is always more abundant in the morning than at any other time of the day. The cause of this may be easily explained by the coolness and dews of the night.

In this hollow, at the distance of about one-third of its height from the top, there is a beautiful cascade, where the water falls over a very broad rock. The inhabitants of the town sometimes walk as far as this fall; and, though the way is vastly rugged, even the ladies indulge themselves with a sight of this charming and picturesque scene, from a delightful point of view which begins in this spot.

It is very remarkable, that, in the hot countries, the slaves make fires, in every place where they are at work, which serve to light their pipes, and to cook or warm their victuals. Those of the Cape, who are sent to cut wood for the use of their masters' families, sometimes go in search of it to the back of the Table Mountain. In the evening, when they give over their labour, if they forget to put out these fires, they insensibly communicate themselves to the dry grass and roots in the neighbourhood. The flames then spread rapidly on all sides and soon reach deep valleys, where all the wood, both dry and green, without exception, blazes forth with surprising fury; having the appearance of so many small volcanoes, connected together by strings of fire. The flames rise in clouds of different shades, according as the caverns have a greater or less depth; night comes on; and the city, the road, and the whole neighbourhood, enjoy a spectacle so much the more magnificent, as they are not ignorant of the cause of it; and the people are therefore quite free from that great terror which such a phenomenon would otherwise occasion: for the extent and height of this conflagration give to the mountain a more dreadful appearance than the lava does to Vesuvius, when it bursts forth with the utmost fury. I never but once saw this majestic illumination; and I can say that it afforded me very great pleasure. All the inventions that could be made for the direction of ships, at the distance of twenty leagues at sea, would fall short of this Pharos, accidentally kindled by some small bushes, which a negligent negro has allowed to take fire.

It is not possible to reach the Devil's Mountain by the Table Mountain, though it is a part which has been separated from it at the summit, either by earthquakes, or by fragments falling successively; but one may easily get

to the Lion Mountain, which, like the other, is a part of the Table also. It is however impracticable to reach its summit without a rope, by which one may clamber up, though not without a good deal of difficulty. From this eminence signals are made to ships at sea. There is always stationed here a person in the Company's service, whose business is, for every vessel that he sees, to fire a cannon; and, by a signal agreed on, the town instantly knows whether the ship comes from Europe or India: but the same man, after he has distinguished the vessel's flag, is obliged to repair to the town, and give information of it to government. This employment is both laborious and cruel; for it frequently happens that the poor wretch must descend and go up in this manner four or five times a day, which oppresses him with fatigue: like many other things, it may be looked upon as a fault in the administration, against which every body's eyes are closed. The person whom I saw, told me very coolly, that little notice was taken of this business: and I could easily credit him; for he was in a most deplorable situation. Though only thirty-five years of age, his knees and legs were become so stiff that he could not walk without great pain.

I paid a visit likewise to the famous estate of Constantia, behind the Table Hill. Hardly one tenth part of the wine is produced by this vineyard, that is sold under its name. It belonged at that time to Mr Cloete. It is said by some that the first plants were brought thither from Burgundy, others from Madeira, and some from Persia. Let this be as it may, certain it is, that this wine is delicious when drank at the Cape; that it loses much by transportation; and that after five years it is not worth any thing. When I arrived, a *demi-boam*, that is, about twenty bottles, was sold from thirty-five to forty piastres; when I departed it was worth more than an hundred.

There is another vineyard close to Constantia, called the *Lesser Constantia*; but it is only within these seven years that it has begun to be as much esteemed as the former. It has even sometimes happened, at the Company's sales, that the produce of it has been sold for a larger sum than that of the other. As it is separated from
the

the other only by a plain hedge, it is probable that formerly there was no difference between the wines but in the manner of their preparation.

All the space contained between the Bay of Falso and the Table Bay, abounds with country seats and beautiful plantations, the owners of which confine themselves to the cultivation of pulse, fruits, and, above all, of vines. The most esteemed, and those which come nearest to the wines of Constantia, are those of Becker and Hendrick. At the Cape, the wine merchants can prepare them in such a manner as to sell them for real Constantia wine. Besides these sweet wines, other settlements, such as the *Pearl*, *Stellenbosch*, and *Dragestein*, produce some kinds of sack, which are valued very high. Here a wine is also made that comes near to Rota, to which that name is given, and which I have found as good in every respect. Those who go to the Cape to purchase any of it, in order to be well served, must apply to the planters themselves; for the merchants are cheats, who, knowing that there is no guard, smoke the casks with sulphur, and fill them up with spirits, to make them keep as long as possible, in case they cannot get quit of them.

The common wine of the country seldom appears at the tables of genteel people; those generally drank, are red wines, from Bourdeaux; and those imported in the Dutch vessels are always preferred to the French wines, brought only in ill-conditioned casks, in which they never keep.

The price of their wine at an average, is a florin the bottle: it however varies according to circumstances; I have seen it at three florins, and sometimes at twelve fous.

The beer brewed at the Cape is not much esteemed; but that of Europe is highly valued, and a great quantity of it is consumed. The price of it varies between twelve and twenty-four fous the bottle. There is, in general, a great sale for every kind of liquor.

When one enters a house they are always presented with a *sopi*, that is to say, a glass of rack or gin, or rather of French brandy: gin, however, is the liquor most used in the morning. Before they sit down to table, etiquette makes it necessary also that they should be offered

a *sopi*, or a little white wine, in which wormwood or aloes have been infused, in order to excite an appetite.

At table, people drink beer or wine indiscriminately. When the desert is completed, the ladies rise up, and retire to a neighbouring apartment, or to the landing-place of the stairs. Pipes, tobacco, and more wine, are then brought for the gentlemen; whilst the ladies are regaled with coffee, Rhenish or Moselle wine sweetened with sugar, and other cordials. This done, they form parties at play; and, when a lucky or interesting stroke is made, it is always the signal, or a pretence, for a bumper extraordinary.

In most families this is the common manner of living; with this difference, that those who are not rich use wines of the country only. The vanity of the inhabitants in this respect is very ridiculous however. While passing along the street with Mr Boers, one day, he made me observe a man who was sitting on the stair before his house; and who, seeing us near enough to be understood, called out to his slave, with as loud a voice as he could, to bring him some red wine. The fiscal then assured me, that this man had not one drop of it in his possession, and that he had not perhaps drank of it ten times all his life. On this account, when we had advanced a little farther, I turned round, and observed that his servant was pouring out beer to him.

The *Hout Bay*, or Wood Bay, gets its name from the brush wood which is found there: it produces no large trees, but only shrubs and bushes. This bay, which is small, and exposed to the west winds, is surrounded with rocks. Vessels seldom seek shelter in it, except when overtaken suddenly by foul weather, and cannot possibly reach any other place. It lies two leagues to the south-west of the Cape.

The Bay of Falso, situated south-east of the Cape, is three leagues distant from it; but one must go over a space equal to four, in order to arrive at the anchoring-ground: the way to it is almost impassable. This spacious bay is capable of affording an asylum to a great number of vessels: it is here that those seek shelter which happen to be in Table Bay when the west wind begins to blow;

blow; and, for a contrary reason, when the south east begins, these vessels return to their former station.

The commander at the Bay of Falso has the rank of an *under merchant*: his salary is moderate; but his place brings him a great deal by the trade which he carries on with foreign vessels. When he purchases their goods, he sends them to the town to be resold; and sometimes he finds means to dispose of them at five times their original price.

There are a great number of warehouses close to the shore of the bay, in which provisions, for the use of the East-India Company's ships, are deposited. A very beautiful hospital has likewise been built here for the crews, and a commodious house for the governor, who generally comes hither and spends a few days while the ships are lying in the bay. Commerce draws hither also a great number of individuals from the Cape, who furnish lodgings for the officers. While the latter are here, the bay is extremely lively: but as soon as the season allows them to weigh their anchors, it then becomes a desert; every one goes away; and its only inhabitants are a company of the garrison, who are relieved every two months. The vessels which arrive then, and have need of provisions, are in a sad situation; for it frequently happens that the warehouses have been so much drained, that they are obliged to bring from the town in carts whatever these new comers are in need of: and the carriage of them generally costs a very extravagant price. The hire of a paltry cart is from twenty to thirty dollars a day; I have even known fifty paid for one: and it is to be noticed, that one journey is all they can make in a day.

The finest fish are caught here, and particularly the *rooman*, that gives its name to a rock in the neighbourhood of which it is found in great abundance. Oysters are fished up here also, but they are extremely scarce.

I must not forget to mention, that in the fields between the Bay of Falso and the Cape Town, but particularly in the environs of Constantia and of *Nuurwe-land*, that charming tree is found, called *silwer blaaderen**. It appears, that at the time when Dr Sparrman was at

E 3

the

* The *protea argentea* of the botanists.

the Cape, this tree was not so abundant as at present; for the planters having observed that it grew up very fast, formed considerable plantations of it, which are now very useful to them for fuel. I remarked that this tree was not to be found in any other place of the colony, not even in the Nimiqua land, from which Mr Sparrman is mistaken in supposing that it was brought. I can affirm that it does not grow there; and I never saw it in any of the other cantons through which I travelled. For this reason I am ready to think that it was carried from some other part of Africa, or of the world; though M. Sonnerat, in his last voyage to the Indies, assures us that it is the only tree originally to be met with at the Cape. It would seem that this naturalist had never seen the *mimosa nilotica*, which is very common there, as well as many other species of much greater value.

The plantations of *Stellenbosch*, *Dragestein*, *Franche-Hoeck*, *the Pearl*, and *Hottentot Holland*, are different cantons, which lie between the Cape and that great chain of mountains perceived on the east. They furnish all the others with wine and fruits.

Stellenbosch is a little village to which several of the inhabitants at the Cape have retired, and where they cultivate their land themselves. There is here a church, a minister, and a *land-roff*, or bailiff, who has the rank of an under merchant. He is a kind of fiscal, who judges in the first instance; but he cannot impose any fine above the sum of fifty rix-dollars: when the affair is more, it must be carried before the proper fiscal.

The *Franche-Hoeck*, or French Corner, lies in an opening of the mountains between *Stellenbosch* and *Dragestein*. It was thus named from some refugees who went thither to cultivate the ground, about the end of the last century. The soil of it is good, and it produces plenty of corn and wine.—The best bread of all the colonies is eat here; but this is not owing to the corn being better than in any other place; it is because the French method introduced by the emigrants has been since preserved without alteration from father to son. This is all that remains of the remembrance of their ancient and cruel country. In this canton I met with only one old man who spoke French: some families, however, still retain

retain their primitive names, and write them as they were written formerly. I have known here *Malberbes*, *Dutoits*, *Retifs*, *Cochers*, and several others, whose names are familiar in France. They may likewise be distinguished from the other planters, who are generally all fair, by their brown hair, and their dark complexion and skin.

Hottentot Holland has this name, because this canton, which was originally inhabited by the Hottentots, was first cultivated by the Dutch. It yields abundance of pulse, fruit, and corn. *Stellenbosch* bounds it on the north, a chain of mountains on the east, the bay of Falso on the west, and on the south some mountains where there are still some inhabitants to be met with.

Tyger Hills are the first chain of mountains and hills observed from Table Bay. They are interspersed here and there with farms, which are excellent for producing corn. All these hills, when sown, present a noble view to the town in the time of harvest; and, on account of their fertility, they have been called the *granary* of the colony. The back part of these hills is also covered with corn farms; and this species of cultivation extends to a great distance. The plantations near the Cape are generally very valuable, on account of the facility with which pulse, fruits, eggs, milk, and all other provisions absolutely necessary, can be transported thither, as there is always a certain and quick sale for them—this is an advantage which the other inhabitants do not possess, because they are so distant.

The inhabitants for twelve miles around the Cape, no longer make use of Hottentots, as they choose rather to buy negroes, who are not so lazy, and on whose services they can have more dependance. The Hottentots, naturally careless and inconstant, often run away when they expect severe labour, and leave their masters in great embarrassment. The negroes desert also, with the vain hopes of procuring their liberty; but they are soon taken. On such occasions they are put into the hands of the bailiff of the canton; the proprietor claims them, and, on paying a small fee, they are restored, after receiving a slight correction; for there is not a country in the world where slaves are used with so great humanity as at the Cape.

The

The Mosambique negroes, and those of Madagascar, are considered to be the best labourers and the most affectionate to their masters. When they land at the Cape, they generally cost from an hundred and twenty to an hundred and fifty dollars each. The Indians are more particularly sought after, for serving in the house and in the town. Malays are also seen here, who are the most intelligent, and, at the same time, the most dangerous of slaves. To assassinate their master or mistress, is in their eyes but an ordinary attempt; and, in the five years which I resided in Africa, I have seen this crime often repeated. They march to the scaffold with the utmost calmness and indifference. I heard one of these wretches tell Mr Boers, that he was happy in having committed his crime; that he was well aware to what kind of death he would be condemned; but that he ardently wished to see his life brought to a conclusion by it, as he would then soon return to his own country. I am amazed that so strong prejudice is not the cause of still greater misfortunes.

At the Cape itself, the Creole slaves are the most valued: they always fetch double what is given for the rest; and when they have been taught any trade, their price becomes exorbitant. A cook, for example, costs from eight to twelve hundred rix-dollars, and others in proportion to their talents. They are all properly clothed; but they go barefooted, as a mark of slavery. That insolent set of domestics called *footmen*, are not to be seen at the Cape; for pride and luxury have not yet introduced those idle and contemptible attendants, who in Europe infest the antichambers of the rich, and who in their behaviour shew every mark of impertinence.

When a stranger arrives at the Cape, he is astonished to see a multitude of slaves as white as Europeans; but this astonishment ceases when it is known that the young negresses, if they are in the least handsome, have each a soldier of the garrison, with whom they may go and spend every Sunday in whatever manner they choose. Self-interest makes the masters wink at the irregularity of their slaves, because they have the prospect of reaping considerable profit from this licentious connection.

But

But there are some negresses, however, who are lawfully married, and negroes established in business, who form one body with the citizens. These are men, who, on account of their services, or from some other motives, have been made free. The facility with which they obtained their liberty formerly, gave rise to a multitude of abuses; because these people, when they grew old and infirm, or when they found themselves destitute of resources, and unfit to gain a livelihood, became vagabonds and public depredators.

These criminals whom the Batavian government often send to the Cape, in order to get quit of them, preserve among these slaves a particular disorder, which will always distress them. Those people, called *Bouginees*, are Malays, all fishermen and harbourers of thieves: with respect to the latter article, their reputation is so well established, that search is always made in the first place among them, when a slave is not to be found, or when any property has been stolen.

It is but seldom that a master here punishes his slaves himself; he commonly commits them into the hands of the fiscal, who orders such corrections as they have deserved to be inflicted upon them. If a master, however, who chooses to punish his slave, treats him with cruelty, the latter may lodge a complaint; and if he can afterwards bring certain proof of his being again used in the same manner, the fiscal obliges the proprietor to sell him. Should he severely wound or kill him, he would be subjected to bodily punishment, or be banished to the isle of *Roben*. These wise regulations certainly do the Dutch government great credit; but how many means are there to shun them?

The isle of *Roben* stands at the distance of two leagues in the sea, opposite to Table Bay, and in view of the city. This island, which has its name from the great number of sea-dogs found near it, is entirely flat, and of very small extent. It is the *Bicetre* of the Cape. It is under the care of a corporal, who has the title of commander; and the unfortunate wretches who are confined in it must daily deliver a certain quantity of limestone, which they dig from quarries. The rest of their time is employed in fishing, or in cultivating small gardens, for which they receive

ceive tobacco and some other indulgences. One cannot see without astonishment in what a vigorous manner greens of every kind grow here: cauliflowers above all attain to a monstrous size: and, though reared amidst sand, their delicacy still surpasses their bulk. Small violet figs, of an exquisite flavour, grow here also. The wells of this spot supply its inhabitants with water as good as that at the Cape—this is a very remarkable phenomenon in an island so small, and nearly level with the sea.

I have observed here a great number of black serpents four feet long, but these are not of the venomous kind: many partridges, and a still greater number of quails, are likewise found in this island. I have sometimes killed fifty or sixty of these birds in one morning.

It is proper here to mention an observation connected with natural history. The quails of the isle of Roben and those of the Cape are quite the same species, without any difference which could render my assertion even dubious; yet the quails of the Cape are merely birds of passage. This fact is well established; and though the distance from the isle of Roben to the continent is only two leagues, it is equally certain that the quails there never pass to any other place. They are always equally plentiful and found in every season. If I likewise add that the quails of Europe are of the exact same species as these, must we not infer that the former do not pass the sea, as has been hitherto pretended? Some travellers assert as a truth, that they have observed them at sea: but this does not decide the question; for, at the distance of more than sixty leagues from the coast, I have shot starlings, chaffinches, linnets, and an owl. All these birds, which, as is well known, never pass the sea, had been undoubtedly driven from their course by some violent storm or hurricane; and I shall always believe that the case was the same with those quails which have been found at sea, until this particular in the natural history of birds be better cleared up.

I am the more inclined to discredit the idea that quails cross the sea, because they may pass by land to Africa, and return by the same way. It is not improbable that if those of the isle of Roben dare not venture to cross that small space of sea which separates them from the coast,
much

much less will they dare to hazard a passage incomparably more considerable. The quail is a very heavy bird; and the smallness of its wings, in proportion to the weight of its body, is nowise suited to a long and continued flight. There is scarcely a sportsman who does not know by experience that, when he springs a quail three or four times successively, it is impossible for it to fly any more; and that, spent with fatigue, it permits itself to be taken by the hand. This is the case with all other birds of this sort.

Together with the quail which is common to Europe and Africa, there is also found at the Cape a much smaller bird, which they likewise call a quail, but very improperly; for it has only three toes on each foot, and all directed forwards; a mark sufficient to convince us that they ought not to be confounded. M. Sonnerat, in his *Voyage to India*, describes a bird of the same kind, which he calls the *three-toed quail*. M. Desfontaines mentions also, in his *Voyage to the Coasts of Barbary*, a like species approaching near to that of the Cape, of which it is doubtless a variety. I am acquainted with two others much larger, one of the island of Ceylon, and the other of Java: I shall give a description of them; and I think it will be necessary to make a new genus of them, to form the link of connection between the quail and the French field duck, to which it has a great resemblance in the conformation of its toes. Government sends annually a detachment to the isle of Roben, to kill sea cows and penguins, from which an oil is extracted, particularly from the latter: they furnish a great deal. There is a small creek at the point of Roben, where a vessel might find shelter, if the south-east winds should hinder her from making the roads at the Cape.

When I left Europe to travel through Africa, it was no part of my plan to take any notice of the manners and customs of the inhabitants of the Cape, much less respecting the political, civil, and military forms of its government. This is a subject, I confess, which engaged the least share of my attention, and which I should give an account of with the greatest reluctance, even were I interested in doing it. I have my own reasons for acting with this reserve, almost in the same manner as the reader
may

may have his for being curious; and neither the reader nor I has any occasion to know them. However, from Kolben's reveries we may collect certain facts, which a residence of ten years at the Cape Town gave him an opportunity of observing. In this point he has not imposed so much on the public as may be imagined. His work, perhaps, contains truths which do not exist at this day, and which have been considered as fabulous. But manners, characters, fashions, laws, and even empires, change in the revolutions of time, and assume numberless variations. They resemble the features of a countenance disfigured by old age, which has no affinity to the portrait drawn from it when in the bloom of youth.

This is not the case with what this sedentary traveller has hardly advanced as to the Hottentots and their religious ceremonies. If what he describes ever existed, the spirit of philosophy, which imperiously hovers over Europe, must have a little cooled the scorching air of the African regions; for I observed there no trace of religion, nothing even that approached the idea of an avenging and rewarding spirit. I lived long enough with and among them, in the very heart of their peaceful deserts; with these hardy people I have accomplished journeys to very remote parts of the country: but no where did I perceive any thing like religion, any trace of what he tells us respecting their legislation and their funerals, or of their customs at the birth of their male children; and nothing, in short, of what he is pleased to mention anent the ridiculous and disgusting ceremony of their marriages.

Kolben's residence at the Cape is not yet out of mind. It is a well known fact that he never left the town: and yet he writes with all the confidence of an eye witness. It is however beyond doubt, that, after an abode of ten years, having failed to accomplish what he was commissioned to do, he found it much easier and more convenient to collect all the tipplers of the colony; who, treating him with derision, whilst they were drinking his wine, dictated memoirs to him from tavern to tavern; tried who could relate to him the most absurd and ridiculous anecdotes; and entertained him with information
till

till they had emptied his bottles. It is in this manner that new discoveries are made, and thus is the progress of the human mind extended!

JOURNEY TO THE EAST OF THE CAPE, THROUGH THE
COUNTRY OF NATAL AND THAT OF CAFFRARIA.

HAVING now finished the different preparations for my journey, I ordered the whole scattered provisions to be gathered together. They were indeed something considerable; for in that first heat which carries the imagination beyond the ordinary bounds, I neither knew nor had set myself any bounds. On the contrary, determined to proceed as far and as long as I possibly could, I knew not whether I should ever have it in my power to return; but I wished above all to guard against the disagreeable disappointment of being obliged to stop, through the want of things absolutely requisite. Even to articles, therefore, the utility of which did not seem to have a direct object, I omitted nothing that might be necessary to my preservation in unforeseen circumstances; and I was always afraid that I should have occasion to reproach myself with some prejudicial neglect. The three months which I spent at the Cape and its environs after I returned from Saldanha Bay, were not more than sufficient to forward all these preparations.

I had desired that two large four-wheeled waggons should be constructed, which were covered with double sail-cloth; and five large boxes, which exactly fitted the bottom of one of these carriages, and which could be opened without being displaced: over these was a large mattress, upon which I proposed to sleep during my journey, in case want of time or any other circumstance should prevent me from erecting tents. This mattress rolled back upon the other box, and it was there that I commonly fixed a cabinet or chest of drawers appointed

to receive insects, butterflies, and such other tender objects as needed great care and attention.

Having so completely succeeded in the preparing of this box; my collections were kept there so well, and they arrived in such good case, that, for the benefit of naturalists who study this branch, and who may be incited to undertake a like journey, I shall, with great pleasure, give a description of its form. It was about two feet and a half in height, eighteen inches in depth, and as much in breadth. It was divided into compartments lengthwise, each containing a drawer, which rose only three inches from the bottom. These drawers placed thus vertically drew upwards, and were open below, so that, if violent jolts (and of these we had a good many) happened to misplace any of the insects from their frames, they fell to the bottom of the box into the empty space of three inches, which I had reserved, and could in no wise hurt those that remained firm: a coat of virgin wax, two or three lines in thickness, melted with linseed oil, and applied to the bottom of the box, stopped its pores, and all destructive vermin were kept at a distance by its smell.

This first waggon, which carried almost my whole arsenal, we named the *master waggon*. The compartments of one of the five boxes already described were filled with large square bottles, each containing five or six pounds of gunpowder. This was placed there only for immediate use, and to supply the wants of the moment. Several small barrels composed my general magazine; and, to preserve them from fire or moisture, I rolled them up in sheeps' skins newly flayed. This covering, when thoroughly dry, was absolutely impenetrable. Reckoning every thing, I could depend upon four or five hundred pounds of gunpowder, and two thousand, at least, of lead and tin, either unwrought or formed into shot and bullets. Of sixteen musquets I had twelve in one carriage: one of these, intended for large animals, such as the rhinoceros, the elephant, and the hippopotamus, carried a ball that weighed a quarter of a pound. Besides these, I was provided with several pairs of double-barrelled pistols, a large scymeter, and a poniard. The second waggon exhibited in caricature the most curious apparatus perhaps ever seen; but on that account
it

it was no less valuable to me. It was my kitchen. What delicious and peaceable repasts did I enjoy! and how dear to my heart the remembrance of my charming and domestic life still is! Whenever I am present at those dinners of ceremony and constraint, where languor commonly presides, the disgust which they occasion conveys me suddenly back to the gentle noise of our haltings, and presents to my imagination the most lively and variegated picture of my good Hottentots employed in preparing a dinner for their friend.

My kitchen utensils were very inconsiderable. I had a gridiron, a frying pan, two large kettles, a cauldron, a few china plates and dishes, coffee-pots, tea-pots, cups, bowls, and some boilers. These were almost all the articles which composed my household furniture.

Besides these, for my own person, I had provided myself with all kinds of linen, a great quantity of white and candied sugar, coffee, tea, and some pounds of chocolate.

As I imagined it would be needful for me to supply the Hottentots who accompanied me with tobacco and strong liquors, I provided an ample abundance of the first article, and three casks of the latter. I carried with me also a large stock of glass ware, toys, and other curiosities, to exchange with the natives as occasion might require, or to gain their friendship. To all these things belonging to my caravan, I must still add a large and a small tent, instruments requisite for repairing my waggons, and for melting lead; a jack for raising burdens, a quantity of nails, iron in bars and in small pieces; pins, thread, needles, distilled liquors, &c. &c. Such was the cargo of my two carriages, which might weigh each nearly about two tons. I must not here omit to speak of my dressing box, which afforded me great amusement. Nothing could equal the astonishment with which it filled the savages in the remote parts of the country. I always made use of it in their presence; and their conversation on this subject has oftener than once prolonged my toilet, and procured me a very agreeable recreation.

My train was composed of thirty oxen; twenty for my two carriages, and ten more to relieve them; three hunters, nine dogs, and five Hottentots: but I afterwards

considerably increased the number of my animals and attendants. That of the latter amounted sometimes to forty. It increased or diminished according to the heat of my kitchen; for in the heart of the African deserts, as in more polished countries, one meets with abundance of agreeable parasites, whose countenances are seldom tinged with a blush: these, however, without being very troublesome, were not altogether useless to me, and they did not disappear when the cloth was taken off.

My intended journey being known throughout all the Cape Town, when the time of my departure approached, I was strongly solicited by several people who wished to accompany me. Every one strove who should first offer his services: but these gentlemen and I reasoned in a manner very different. They thought that their proposals would afford me much joy; and they could never believe that I meant to depart alone. Such an idea appeared to them to be altogether ridiculous; whilst I, on the contrary, considered it as very judicial and prudent. I had been informed that, of all the expeditions government had set on foot, for making discoveries in the interior parts of Africa, not one had succeeded. I knew also that a diversity of humours and characters could never conduce to the same end: in a word, that concord so requisite in a hazardous and new enterprise could not be maintained among men, where self-love would make them flatter themselves with gaining an equal share in the honour of its success. After these reflections, I was not inclined to expose myself to the risk of losing the expence of my journey, and the fruits which I hoped to derive from it. I wished to set out alone, and to be entire master of myself: I therefore kept firm to my purpose; and, rejecting all these offers, cut short every proposal of the kind that was made to me. When my equipage was quite ready, I bade my friends farewell, and on the 18th of December 1781, at nine in the morning, I departed, escorting my convoy, myself on horseback. I did not intend to make a long march. According to the plan which I had laid down, I directed my course towards Hottentot Holland; and towards evening, halted at the bottom of those mountains by which it is bounded on the east side of the Cape.

Being

Being then quite abandoned to myself, and not expecting any support or assistance but from my own arm, I returned, as I may say, to man's primitive state; and, for the first time in my life, breathed the delicious and pure air of liberty.

I was now under the necessity of subjecting my operations, as well as my people, to some sort of order; for every thing depended on my commencement. Without being a deep philosopher, I had sufficient acquaintance with mankind to know that those who wish to be obeyed, must prescribe laws; and that, unless they are steady and vigilant over their actions, they can never flatter themselves with being able to govern those who are under them. I had to fear, every moment, that I should be abandoned by my attendants, or that my weakness would lead them into disorder. Without affectation, therefore, I pursued a prudent course, which I always followed afterwards; and no circumstance whatever made me relax, even for a single day, in my useful severity.

Scarcely had we halted, when I gave orders for the cattle to be unyoked in my presence; and I sent my oxen to feed, under the care of two of my people, in whom I had perceived uncommon punctuality and intelligence. With the rest, I reviewed my carriages and effects, in order to see that nothing was out of order. I even examined the wheels and the harness: and I gave to each his employment; and addressed them all, in a short speech, as to the different occupations which would afterwards be assigned to them. This procedure immediately filled them with the idea that I was a careful and prudent man, and that the least neglect in their service could not escape me. After this ceremony, I mounted my horse, and went to reconnoitre the road on the mountain, which we were to travel next day. On my return, I found my oxen in excellent condition, and a large fire burning, which I had ordered to be kindled. Having made a slight supper on the provisions which we had brought from the town, we went to rest; I in my carriage, and my Hottentots under the canopy of heaven.

Next morning we yoked our oxen before day, and made ourselves ready for attempting the mountain; but we could not reach the top of it without being in great

danger of breaking our carriages, and laming our oxen. The road is cut out even, on the back part of it; but it is so steep, and so rough with splinters of rock, that I am surpris'd government should have so much neglected the only route by which the inhabitants of these cantons can go to the Cape. From the top of the hill there is a noble and most extensive view, including all the plantations that lie scattered throughout an immense valley, inclosed by a chain of other hills and the sea.

We were under the necessity of unyoking our oxen here, to let them take breath, and to give them some hours rest. As I was uneasy about the descent, and anxious to know the safest method of getting to the plain country, I made use of this short interval in taking a survey of the neighbourhood. Having remarked that a gradual and gentle descent on the back of the mountain would lead us, safely, to that delightful country, I was quite freed from my difficulty; and returning speedily to my caravan, we set out again on our march. The road, was indeed, very convenient for our carriages, and did not in any degree impede their motion: we therefore descended, with a pleasure and ease equal to the pain and unhappiness which we had experienced on the other side. As savage animals seldom appear in these cantons, having nothing to dread, and no precautions to take, we prosecuted our march till ten at night, and arrived at the river Palmit, which is so called by the Dutch, because of the great quantity of reeds that grow upon its banks.

On getting up next morning, we looked for our oxen, but in vain; they had all disappeared: unaccustomed as yet to lie down beside our carriages during the night, they had dispersed themselves on every side. My people, however, went in search of them; but it was a considerable time before they could get them gathered together, and we were not in a state to depart before nine. About eleven, discovering a plantation about fifty paces from me, I proceeded towards it; when the proprietor who had no doubt seen my caravan, came up to meet me. So soon as he observed me, he made himself known; and I found that he was the same person who, at the Cape, had sold me my *master waggon*, and the five pair of oxen which drew it. I could not help stopping on this occasion,

caſion, and accepting a dinner from him, which he offered me in the moſt preſſing manner: I yielded to his entreaties, eſpecially, when he acknowledged to me, that, having learned at the Cape the day of my departure, and the road I intended to take, he had taken the ſtart of me with his people, and made preparations to entertain me at his houſe. I deſired that the oxen might be unyoked on the ſpot where he had met me; and going along with him, was very politely received by his wife and two pretty daughters, who compoſed all his family. Till the dinner hour, we employed our time in viewing his eſtate; and, during our repaſt, he did not neglect to enlarge upon the excellence of the waggon which he had ſold to me. I was even forced to liſten to a long hiſtory, in which he repeated all the good qualities of every one of the oxen which drew it. I muſt, indeed, do him the juſtice to ſay that he did not impoſe upon me: I have ſince experienced, and, I muſt allow, much to Mr Smit's credit, that theſe oxen were the beſt I ever uſed, and the moſt to be truſted to; and that, in my uncommon tract, and the moſt dangerous paſſes, his waggon, being ſolidly built, held out to the very laſt.

I reſiſted the entreaties of this good family, who deſired me to ſpend the night with them, and departed immediately after dinner; and, after ſome hours travelling, we croſſed the river *Bot*, and all that canton which is called *Ouwe-Hoeck*. I was anxious to make up for the time I had waited at dinner; and therefore we did not halt till eleven at night; beſide a little pond of brackiſh water.

The ſun had ſcarcely appeared above the horizon, when we ſet forward on our journey; and, in the morning, we ſtopped at the houſe of Francis Bathenos, who ſent me a loaf which I aſked from him, and for which he would have no payment. He alſo requested that I would alight; but I declined, not wiſhing in any manner to ſpend any time in paying viſits. In this diſtriſt I conſtantly met with amazing flocks of that kind of antelopes which the planters name *reebock*: it is as yet very little known: Mr Sparrman merely mentions it; and the name of this animal, in the French edition of his work, is badly tranſlated; for *reebock* does not ſignify

red

red goat, but *goat of the sea shore*.—The heat at noon became so excessive, that I was under the necessity of stopping; and, as my people and cattle were taking breath a little, I made a small trip, in which I killed one of these reebocks: it was a male; the colour, in general, was a delicate grey, rather darker on the back than the sides, and the belly was white: it was not absolutely reddish, nor were its horns more than five or six inches long. Sparrman who says he describes them merely from memory, must have been mistaken, when he mentions them as being a foot long. The description and figure of this antelope will be found in my account of the African Quadrupeds. When I returned to my people, we halted a little while, to eat a few steaks from the animal I had just killed: and, in the space of four leagues, which we travelled in order to get a convenient spot for encamping, we saw near us, on all sides, flocks of antelopes, bontebocks*, and bubales†, together with some zebras, &c. &c. and a good many ostriches. The variety and gait of these large flocks were very entertaining, and merit the attention of a naturalist. My dogs followed very keenly all these different species, which crossed each other as they fled, and sometimes found themselves all promiscuously collected into one body, according as the dogs attacked them. This confusion, like stage machinery, scarcely needed a moment to rectify; I called back my dogs, and each individual immediately returned to its flock, which kept at a particular distance from the rest. This sight will be more easily understood, by keeping in view the month of May in Holland: nothing is then to be seen but vast flocks of cattle, separated from one another with a kind of symmetry, and which are never blended together. These animals were so full of curiosity, and so tame, that, if it had not been my dogs, I might have killed a great many of them from my carriage; but the approach of the dogs put them all to flight.

A certain curiosity equally familiar seems to characterize all animals with horns, and particularly antelopes; the zebras and ostriches only kept at a distance.

As

* The *antelope scripta* of Mr Pallas.

† The *antelope bubalis*.

As we were only four or five leagues from some warm baths, much talked of by the inhabitants of the Cape, I was anxious to see them; though I was, at same time, afraid that my journey would be retarded. To make in the one way what I was about to lose on the other, I set out earlier than usual; and at ten in the morning we found ourselves close by them. This spring of warm mineral water, which is about thirty leagues from the Cape, is commonly held in great estimation. Government have erected a very spacious and convenient building here, for the use of such invalids as may be anxious for bathing: their lodging, indeed, costs them nothing; but these invalids are obliged to furnish their own necessaries, a matter not easily done in a country affording very few resources. In this place there are two separate baths, one for the blacks, and another for the whites. Near this also stands that mountain, called the Tower of Babel, the height of which has been so much exaggerated by Kolben: it is far from being equal to that of the Table Mount. Around this place, the company, under the direction of a corporal, have established several repositories, where they feed all the cattle which are necessary for supplying their vessels with provisions.

Next morning I passed the river *Steenbock*, not far from which stands a beautiful seat belonging to a widow named Wissel; and after dinner, before I crossed a second river called *Sonder End*, I saw in my way the *Zicken-Huys*. This is a repository or rather hospital for the diseased oxen belonging to the company: they are here sometimes cured; but this establishment is attended with one convenience, which is that these animals cannot convey their infection to those that are in health, and separated from them.

I had determined upon travelling during the whole night; but I was obliged to halt at nine in the evening, in the valley of *Soete-Melck*, as a boggy marsh blocked up our way: it would not have been prudent to entangle ourselves in it while it was dark.

Early next morning I saw at a little distance a beautiful house, which was a post belonging to the company, under the command of Mr Martines. As I was acquainted with him, having been repeatedly in his company at the fiscal's house at the Cape, I paid him a visit. Like
all

all the other planters, he invited me to spend a few days with him; but my impatience to proceed on my journey made me reject his kind offer. About noon I passed near a small horde of Hottentots, who appeared to me so miserable and wretched, that I gave them a few presents. I saw no kind of cattle among them; they subsisted solely upon what they could get for their work in the adjacent plantations. I desired several of them to follow me, and promised to pay them abundantly on their return; but I could not prevail on any of them, until I had assured them that I would give them a quantity of tobacco, sufficient to serve them on the road. They then engaged that they would be at my service.—Having spent the night at *Tiger-Hoec*, or the tigers corner, I waited for my recruits till nine next morning; but just as I was begun to despair of them, and to think of prosecuting my journey, they arrived, three in number, with their arms and baggage. This small reinforcement gave me much pleasure: they mixed with the rest; and, soon getting acquainted, I delayed my departure until the afternoon, resolving in the mean time to make a little tour in the neighbourhood. One of the new comers asked liberty to follow me, assuring me that he was an excellent huntsman; but as I had brought with me from Europe that prejudice which people commonly have against those who sound their own praises, I had but little confidence in the talents of my Hottentot. I however ordered a musquet to be given him; and we set out together.

We soon observed some flocks of antelopes, with which the whole country was covered, but they always kept out of our reach: at last, after a good deal of running, my hunter halting all of a sudden, called out to me, that he saw a *blaw-bock*, a blue goat, squatted down. I instantly turned my eyes towards the place which he pointed out, but I could perceive nothing. He then begged me to remain quiet, and not to stir, assuring me that he would soon put the animal in my possession. He immediately made a turn round, creeping on his knees, whilst I watched him closely; but I could not understand the meaning of this stratagem, which was quite new to me. The animal rose up soon after, and began to browse quietly, without

without removing from the place. I at first thought it was a white horie; for from the place in which I stood it seemed to me to be wholly of that colour, having never before that time seen an antelope of this species: but I was soon undeceived when I perceived its horns. My Hottentot mean while continued to drag himself along upon his belly; and drawing quickly sufficiently near to take aim, fired at it, upon which it instantly fell.—I was so rejoiced that I made only a single step to the place; and I had the satisfaction to contemplate at my leisure the most curious and beautiful kind of Antelope that Africa produces. For this piece of service I assured my Hottentot that I would reward him very generously upon my return to our encampment. This man's intelligence, and the various methods he employed to surmise the animal, made his service very valuable and important: on this account I determined to gain him over by different allurements which seduce the Hottentots. I began by presenting him with a large provision of tobacco; and to this present I added a little tinder, a tinder box, and one of my best knives: he immediately made use of the latter instrument, and began to flay the animal with the same dexterity as he had fired. The skin I carefully preserved.

Mr Pennant has described this antelope under the name of the *blue antelope*, and Buffon, under that of the *tseiran*. The latter has given the figure of a part of its horns: it is rare, and very little known. During my residence in Africa, I saw only two of these antelopes, and another which was brought some years before to the governor, when I lived at the Cape Town. These, as well as mine, came from the valley of *Soete-Melk*, the only canton which they inhabit. I was assured that I should see some of them in the country of the great Nimiquas; but notwithstanding this information, and all my researches, I found myself disappointed: all the savages affirmed that they were unacquainted with them. I was assured also that the female, as well as the male, had horns; but as to that, I can say nothing, since the three which I saw were all of the same kind.

This animal is principally of a faint blue colour, inclining to grey; but the belly and the interior part of the legs,

legs, throughout their whole length, are as white as snow; the head, above all, is beautifully spotted with white.

I did not perceive, as Dr Sparrman says, that this antelope resembles blue velvet when alive, and that when dead the skin changes its colour; living or dead its appearance to me always was the same. The tints of that which I brought with me never varied. At Amsterdam, I saw another which had been kept for more than fifteen years. The case was the same with regard to that belonging to the governor of the Cape: it was still fresher than mine, but in other respects they were equal. I cannot avoid adding here, that I never saw this animal properly represented in any of the engravings or figures which I have seen of it hitherto. In my description of the quadrupeds of Africa, I shall give one from a drawing which I made of this upon the spot, before it was skinned.

The weather being cool and cloudy, we marched six hours next morning in order to reach the borders of a very large pond which abounded with small tortoises, of which we caught about twenty; we broiled them all in the same manner on the coals, and found them excellent. They were from seven to eight inches long, and about four broad. The shell on the back was of a whitish grey colour, somewhat inclining to yellow: they had a disagreeable smell when alive; but when roasted, they were quite free of it.

It is very singular that, when the waters are dried up by excessive heat, the tortoises, which always seek for moisture, bury themselves under the earth in proportion as the surface of it becomes dry; to find them, it is then necessary to dig to a considerable depth, in the spot where they have concealed themselves. They generally remain as if asleep; and never awaken, or make their appearance, until the rainy season has supplied the ponds and small lakes with water, on the borders of which they deposit their eggs, where they continue exposed to the air; they are about the size of those of a pigeon: they leave the care of hatching them to the heat of the sun. Their eggs have a very fine taste; the white, which the force of fire cannot harden, preserves the transparency of a blueish jelly.

I know

I know not whether this instinct is common to all the species of water tortoises, and whether they all employ the same means; but this I can affirm, that every time, during the great droughts, when I wanted to procure any of them, by digging in those places where there had been water, I was certain of finding as many as I had occasion for.

This kind of fishing, or whatever else it may be called, was not new to me: for at Surinam a stratagem of the same kind is employed in taking two species of fish, which bury themselves also; one of which is called the *varappe*, and the other the *gorret* or the *kevikwi*.

Our waggons being station'd on the banks of this pond, frightened a great many antelopes which were coming to drink, and prevented them from approaching us.

The bontebocks, above all, appeared in flocks of at least two thousand. I am convinced that this day, including bubales, antelopes of all kinds, zebras, and ostriches, I had before my eyes at one time above four or five thousand animals: of all these, however, I longed only for an ostrich; but could find no way of gratifying my desire, for these birds would not allow us to come near them. The other species, though rather timid, were from time to time within gun-shot of us; but I was not willing to fire merely for the pleasure of destroying them: we had plenty of provisions; and besides, my powder was too valuable.

Between us and Swellendam we had now only two rivers: *Brede-Rivier*, the broad river; and *Klip-Rivier*, or the river of flints. I was very desirous of being acquainted with this spot, which is the principal place of the colony: I proposed to spend a few days in it, and to survey all these animals attentively at my leisure. We arrived there very early the day following.

The most considerable of all the rivers which we had crossed, were *Diep-Rivier* and *Brede-Rivier*. During the great heats, the rest are hardly rivulets; but in the rainy season they are soon converted into impetuous torrents, which cut off all communication with the Cape Town.

I remained several days at Swellendam with Mr Ryneveld, the bailiff of the place, who treated me with much

legs, throughout their whole length, are as white as snow; the head, above all, is beautifully spotted with white.

I did not perceive, as Dr Sparrman says, that this antelope resembles blue velvet when alive, and that when dead the skin changes its colour; living or dead its appearance to me always was the same. The tints of that which I brought with me never varied. At Amsterdam, I saw another which had been kept for more than fifteen years. The case was the same with regard to that belonging to the governor of the Cape: it was still fresher than mine, but in other respects they were equal. I cannot avoid adding here, that I never saw this animal properly represented in any of the engravings or figures which I have seen of it hitherto. In my description of the quadrupeds of Africa, I shall give one from a drawing which I made of this upon the spot, before it was skinned.

The weather being cool and cloudy, we marched six hours next morning in order to reach the borders of a very large pond which abounded with small tortoises, of which we caught about twenty; we broiled them all in the same manner on the coals, and found them excellent. They were from seven to eight inches long, and about four broad. The shell on the back was of a whitish grey colour, somewhat inclining to yellow: they had a disagreeable smell when alive; but when roasted, they were quite free of it.

It is very singular that, when the waters are dried up by excessive heat, the tortoises, which always seek for moisture, bury themselves under the earth in proportion as the surface of it becomes dry; to find them, it is then necessary to dig to a considerable depth, in the spot where they have concealed themselves. They generally remain as if asleep; and never awaken, or make their appearance, until the rainy season has supplied the ponds and small lakes with water, on the borders of which they deposit their eggs, where they continue exposed to the air; they are about the size of those of a pigeon: they leave the care of hatching them to the heat of the sun. Their eggs have a very fine taste; the white, which the force of fire cannot harden, preserves the transparency of a blueish jelly.

I know

I know not whether this instinct is common to all the species of water tortoises, and whether they all employ the same means; but this I can affirm, that every time, during the great droughts, when I wanted to procure any of them, by digging in those places where there had been water, I was certain of finding as many as I had occasion for.

This kind of fishing, or whatever else it may be called, was not new to me: for at Surinam a stratagem of the same kind is employed in taking two species of fish, which bury themselves also; one of which is called the *varappe*, and the other the *gorret* or the *kevikwi*.

Our waggons being stationed on the banks of this pond, frightened a great many antelopes which were coming to drink, and prevented them from approaching us.

The bontebocks, above all, appeared in flocks of at least two thousand. I am convinced that this day, including bubales, antelopes of all kinds, zebras, and ostriches, I had before my eyes at one time above four or five thousand animals: of all these, however, I longed only for an ostrich; but could find no way of gratifying my desire, for these birds would not allow us to come near them. The other species, though rather timid, were from time to time within gun-shot of us; but I was not willing to fire merely for the pleasure of destroying them: we had plenty of provisions; and besides, my powder was too valuable.

Between us and Swellendam we had now only two rivers: *Brede-Rivier*, the broad river; and *Klip-Rivier*, or the river of flints. I was very desirous of being acquainted with this spot, which is the principal place of the colony: I proposed to spend a few days in it, and to survey all these animals attentively at my leisure. We arrived there very early the day following.

The most considerable of all the rivers which we had crossed, were *Diep-Rivier* and *Brede-Rivier*. During the great heats, the rest are hardly rivulets; but in the rainy season they are soon converted into impetuous torrents, which cut off all communication with the Cape Town.

I remained several days at Swellendam with Mr Ryneveld, the bailiff of the place, who treated me with much

politeness and civility. Finding my two carriages overloaded, and too heavy, I was sensible that it would be requisite for me to get a third. My host was kind enough to order a two wheeled one to be constructed for me; and, when I went away, he furnished me with a great quantity of fresh provisions.

I recruited a few more Hottentots; and I purchased several oxen and goats; together with a cow, to supply me with milk; and a cock, which I intended to be my natural alarm in the morning.

There is not a single naturalist, nor even a clown, in the country, who does not know that a cock crows regularly during night at the same hour, and that he always proclaims the approach of day.

Here I must observe that some have pretended, in more than one public paper, to ridicule this precaution (which procured me pleasure, if it did not afford me a resource in the moment of necessity), by making me utter absurd speeches, which agree very ill with the emphasis of the narrator. When they assured the public that I hoped to supply, by a cock, the place of my watch, should it happen to be deranged, they ought also to have informed the incredulous, at least, in what manner a cock can ever become a watch. In the same style it has been said, that, meeting a lion for the first time, "*we measured each other with a haughty look, and suffered each other to pass quietly; both satisfied with our noble countenances.*"

But laying these poetical romances aside, I can say that my expectations in my cock were not disappointed. This animal, which always roosted either on my tent or my waggon, regularly announced to me the appearance of aurora. He soon grew tame; never quitted the neighbourhood of my camp; and, if the want of food obliged him to go to any distance, he always returned on the approach of night. He was sometimes pursued by small quadrupeds of the weasel or polecat kind; and I have seen him, half flying and half running, retreat towards us, making as loud a noise as he could: but on such occasions some of my people or dogs never failed to go speedily to his assistance.

An

An animal that rendered me more essential services; which, by its useful presence, suspended and even dissipated certain bitter and disagreeable reflections that occurred to my mind; which, by its simple and striking instinct, seemed to anticipate **my efforts**; and which comforted me in my languor—was an ape, of that kind so common at the Cape, under the name of *barwians*. As it was very familiar, and attached itself to me in a particular manner, I made it my taster. When we met with any fruit or roots with which my Hottentots were unacquainted, we never touched them until my dear Kees had first tasted them; if he refused them, we judged them to be either disagreeable or dangerous, and threw them away.

Apes have one peculiarity which distinguishes them from all other animals, and brings them very near to man. They have received from nature an equal share of greediness and curiosity: though destitute of appetite, they taste without necessity every kind of food that is offered to them; and always lay their paws upon every thing that they find within their reach.

Kees possessed another quality for which I valued him still more. He was my best guardian; and, whether by night or by day, he immediately awoke on the least appearance of danger. By his cries, and other expressions of fear, we were always informed of the approach of an enemy before my dogs could discover it: they were so accustomed to his voice, that they slept in perfect security, and never went the rounds; on which account I was extremely angry, fearing that I should no longer find that indispensable assistance which I had a right to expect, if any disorder or fatal accident should deprive me of my faithful guardian. However, when he once gave the alarm, they all stopped to watch the signal; and on the smallest motion of his eyes, or shaking of his head, I have seen them all rush forwards, and scamper away in that quarter to which they observed his looks directed.

I frequently carried him along with me in my hunting excursions; during which he would divert himself in climbing up trees, in order to search for gum, of which he was remarkably fond. He sometimes discovered honey in the crevices of rocks, or in hollow trees; but when

he could find nothing, when fatigue and exercise had whetted his appetite, and when he began to be really oppressed by hunger, a scene took place which appeared to me vastly comic. When he could not meet with gum or honey, he searched for roots, and ate them with much relish; especially one of a particular species, which, unluckily for me, I found excellent and very refreshing, and which I wished much to partake of. But kees was very cunning: when he found any of this root, if I was not near enough to claim my part, he made great haste to devour it, having his eyes all the time directed towards me. By the distance I was from him, he judged of the time that he had to eat it alone; and for the most part I arrived too late. Sometimes, however, when he was mistaken in his calculation, and when I came upon him sooner than he expected, he immediately endeavoured to conceal the morsels from me: but, by means of a well applied blow, I forced him to restore the theft; and in my turn becoming master of the envied prey, he was obliged to receive laws from the stronger party. Kees entertained no hatred or rancour; and I easily made him understand how detestable that base selfishness was, of which he had set me an example.

He took a very ingenious method to tear up these roots which afforded me much entertainment. He laid hold of the tuft of leaves with his teeth; and pressing his fore paws firmly against the earth, and pulling backwards with his head, the root commonly followed: when this method, which required considerable force, failed to succeed, he seized the tuft as before, as close to the earth as he could; then throwing his heels over his head, the root always yielded to the jerk which he gave it. In our marches, when he found himself fatigued, he got upon the back of one of my dogs, which had the complaisance to carry him for whole hours at a time: one only, which was larger and stronger than the rest, ought to have served him for this purpose; but the cunning animal well knew how to avoid this drudgery. The instant he found Kees on his shoulders, he stood still, and let the caravan pass on without ever stirring from the spot. The timorous Kees still persisted; but whenever he began to lose sight of us, he was then forced to dismount: and both he
and

and the dog ran with all their might to overtake us. For fear of being surpris'd, the dog dexterously suffered him to get before him, and watch'd him with great attention. In short, he had acquired an ascendancy over my whole pack, for which he was perhaps indebted to the superiority of his instinct; for among animals, as well as among men, address frequently gets the better of strength. Kees could not endure guests, while at his meals: if any of the dogs came too near him at that time, he gave them a hearty stroke which these cowards never attempted to return, but ran off as fast as they could.

It seem'd to me a very singular thing, and I could not conceive the reason, that, next to the serpent, the animal which he most feared was one of his own species: whether it was that he was sensible that his being tamed had deprived him of great part of his faculties, and that fear had got possession of his senses; or that he was jealous, and dreaded a rivalry in my friendship. It would have been very easy for me to catch wild ones, and to tame them; but I never thought of it. I had given Kees a place in my heart, which no other after him could occupy; and I sufficiently testified how far he might depend on my constancy. Sometimes he heard others of the same species making a noise in the mountains; and, notwithstanding his terror, he thought proper, I know not for what reason, to reply to them. When they heard his voice, they approach'd: but, as soon as he perceived any of them, he fled with horrible cries; and, running between our legs, implored the protection of every body, while his limbs quiver'd through fear. We found it no easy matter to calm him; but he gradually resum'd, after some time, his natural tranquillity. He was very much addicted to thieving, a fault common to almost all domestic animals; but in Kees it was disguis'd into a talent, the ingenious efforts of which I admir'd. Notwithstanding all the correction bestow'd upon him by my people, who took the matter seriously, he was never amended. He knew quite well how to untie the ropes of a basket, and take out provisions from it; and, especially milk, of which he was exceedingly fond: more than once he has made me go without any. I often beat him

very severely myself; but, when he got from me, he did not make his appearance at my tent till towards night.

I have dwelt on these details with great satisfaction; and if they add nothing to the progress of human knowledge, they are a great deal for my simple and ingenuous heart. They recal to my memory very agreeable amusements; hours of serenity and peace, and the only moments of my life in which I have known the full value of existence. During the whole time that I remained at Swellendam, I made a suitable return to the tender cares of my host by the liveliest testimonies of gratitude: but this manner of life did not suit my humour; and as soon as my two-wheeled waggon was completed, I packed up my kitchen furniture and other effects, and set out, without farther delay, on the 12th of January 1782. According to the information I had received, I directed my course always along the eastern coast, keeping at a certain distance from the sea. The corn farms do not reach farther in this quarter: the moderate price of grain is not an equivalent for the difficulty there is in transporting it to the town.

Two leagues from this place I passed a small river, named *Buffas*; and after two days march we arrived at a wood named the wood of the *Great Father*. While I was making preparations for spending twenty-four hours in this wood, which I wished to traverse, and was counting my dogs, I found there was one amissing, which was a favourite bitch, called *Rosetta*. Her absence embarrassed me greatly: it was a real loss, that reduced my pack almost to nothing; and deprived me of my favourite, which on her part loved me much. Having enquired of my people if any of them had seen her on the road, one of them assured me that he had given her some food, but in the morning. After a fruitless search of an hour or two, I made my people separate, and call her on all sides: I also gave orders for some fuses to be fired; that the reports, if they reached her, might direct her what course to pursue. But as all this did not succeed, I ordered one of my Hottentots to get on horseback, desiring him to return the same way we had come, and bring her back to me whatever it might cost. After four hours I had the pleasure of seeing my messenger return full gallop,

lop, carrying before him, on the bow of his saddle, a chair and a large panier. Rosetta ran before him; and leaping upon me, almost oppressed me with her caresses. My Hottentot told me that he had found her at the distance of two leagues from the place where we stopped, sitting upon the road, close by a chair and a basket, which had got loose from our baggage without being noticed. I had heard many circumstances, no less extraordinary than this, related of the fidelity of dogs; but I had never before been a witness to an instance of it. I own that the account given me by my messenger affected me so much, that I shed tears. I again caressed the poor animal; and this proof of attachment which she had given, endeared her still more to me. If she had not been found, she must have perished by hunger on the spot, or become a prey during night to the first ferocious animal that might have found her. As the fuses which I ordered to be discharged on her account, had not roused any game; and as I was likewise satisfied, from an exact survey of the forest, that I could not expect to find any, we the next morning proceeded on our march.

We had scarcely advanced four leagues, when, in crossing a small river which takes its source in this forest, my two-wheeled waggon was overturned. The rest of the day was hardly sufficient for us to recover, dry, and put in order, my kitchen furniture and necessaries: a great part of my porcelain being broken, was left on the spot; but very fortunately I had more to replace it. Having proceeded three leagues further, we were stopped by the river Duyvenochs, which at that time was not passable. As this country was covered with wood, I flattered myself with the hopes of finding pretty birds and insects: resolving, therefore, to wait till the river should fall, I ordered my tents to be erected at the edge of the forest, while my Hottentots constructed some huts.

I was, however, very unfortunate; for the inhabitants of the neighbourhood, informed of my arrival, came with great eagerness to pay me a visit, and to disturb me in my charming retreat. I was teased with the long preambles they made to their obliging speeches, in which they reproached me for not stopping among them; and harassing me with the offers which they repeated, under a thousand different

different forms, to prevail upon me, they mentioned, with great emphasis, several curious travellers whom they had entertained, and particularly Dr Sparrman, a member of the Swedish Academy: but, however respectable this authority seemed, I did not think proper to quit my camp.

I had determined never to lodge in any habitation, during the course of my travels, that I might be more at liberty, both in the day-time and in the night; and that I might have my people and baggage always at hand, in order to husband those valuable moments which one must always sacrifice to the idle talk and ridiculous relations of these planters, who fatigue you with their tales, and exhaust you with their questions; but, above all, that I might save my spirituous liquors, with which I should have been always under the necessity of enlivening their tedious conversations. I therefore thanked these gentlemen, who were not able to divert me from my purpose, so firm and irrevocable was my resolution. The conduct of Dr Sparrman was no example to me; for our different views must have given us different ideas: he had needed only day-light, to enable him to pursue his botanical researches; but as I frequently spent a part of the night in hunting, if I found it necessary, I should have been forced to abstain from this practice, or to derange my hosts. Another motive, which is merely personal, may, in two words, give an idea of my character, and of the plan of life which it had induced me to follow: should it have the appearance of self-love, my age, the education I have received, my country, and the difficulties I overcame, will, I hope, easily plead my excuse. Though I acknowledge the usefulness of proper highways among polished nations, my being accustomed to form them myself, in my youth, at Surinam, made me always consider them as a restraint which lessens the value of liberty. Proud of his origin, man thinks it an indignity that people should beforehand dare to number his steps. I have always carefully avoided beaten tracks; and never imagined myself wholly free, but when surrounded by the rocks, forests, and deserts of Africa. I was sure of meeting with no other traces of human labour than those which I left myself. By the freedom of
my

my will, which commanded them with unbounded sway, and by my complete independence, I really saw in man the sovereign of all animated beings, the absolute despot of nature. Situations which I considered delightful, might to others appear very alarming. These whimsical notions proceed from the impressions I received in the early part of my life; they are only the pure and natural sentiments of liberty, which rejects, without distinction, every thing that seems desirous of prescribing its bounds. I was attached to my principles by too many reasons not to adhere rigidly to them; except in one instance only, when through policy it was absolutely impossible for me to refuse an invitation, I never deviated from my plan during all my travels.

I distributed the employment of my time; and the usual order of my occupations was as follows:—During the night, when we did not travel, I slept in my tent, or in my waggon: awakened by my cock at the break of day, I instantly got ready every thing myself for making my coffee, whilst my people were occupied in cleaning and taking care of my animals. On the first appearance of the sun's rays, I took my fusée, and setting out with my ape, we made a diligent search every where around till the hour of ten. When I returned to my tent, I found it always clean and well swept: it was under the particular care of an old African, named *Swanepoel*; who, being no longer able to follow us in our excursions on foot, remained to guard the camp, in which he preserved great order. The furniture of my tent was not cumbersome; one or two chairs, a table which I employed only for dissecting animals, and some utensils requisite for preserving them, formed all its ornaments. I then laboured from ten o'clock till noon; and during that interval I put in order in my drawers the insects which I had caught.—The ceremony of my dinner was equally simple. I placed upon my knees a piece of board, covered with a cloth, upon which one dish only of roast or broiled meat was served up. After this frugal repast, which did not hinder me long, I returned to my labour, if I had any work to finish; and then I set out to hunt till sunset. On my return I lighted a candle, and passed a few hours in committing to my journal
my

my observations, acquisitions, and in short all the events of the day. In the mean time my Hottentots collected my oxen around my waggons and tent. The goats, after they were milked, lay down here and there indiscriminately among my dogs. When business was finished, and a large fire kindled, as usual, we placed ourselves in a circle round it. I drank my tea; and while my people were socially smoking their pipes, they told tales, the natural humour of which frequently made me shake my sides with laughter. I took great pleasure in encouraging them; and in proportion as I shewed more frankness, good-nature, and attention, they were the less timid before me. Sometimes indeed, when in better humour, or more favourably disposed by the sight of a charming evening, after the fatigues of the day, I felt myself hurried away by an involuntary charm, and I gently yielded to the illusion. I then observed them contending who should shew most wit to please me; and the best story-teller could judge favourably of his performance by the profound silence which prevailed among us. I know not what powerful attraction constantly carries me back to these peaceful scenes. I still behold myself in the midst of my camp, surrounded by my people and animals: a plant, a flower, a fragment of rock, scattered here and there—nothing escapes my memory; and this spectacle, always affecting, every where amuses and follows me.

Our conversations were sometimes lengthened till very late at night; and I must candidly own that lively fallies which greatly delighted me, frequently escaped from these clownish people, who had never been polished by education. I put many questions to them; above all, with respect to Kolben, and different authors; and concerning their religion, their laws, and their customs: but they openly laughed in my face. Sometimes, taking the matter in a serious light, I saw them get in a passion, shrug up their shoulders, and give vent to their imprecations. I recollect that, endeavouring to vilify their faculties and intelligence, with a view to nettle them, I compared them to those people who, in the capital of a great nation like Paris, procure without labour a genteel subsistence to an amazing number of vagabonds, honour-
ed

ed with the modest appellation of *sharpers*. I represented to them, under a thousand different forms, the ingenious resources of these cameleons, and extolled their merit much: but with what satisfaction did I perceive them unanimously prefer the simplicity of their rural and peaceful life, and view these resources as base and sordid means, for a nation who boast of their superiority over the people of nature!—Worthy mortals, who have been painted to us as devouring your fellow-creatures, and whom a child however might manage! peaceful Hottentots! treat with contempt those people who reduce you to a state of slavery, and distinguish you from brutes only by the cruelties which they withhold from them, in order to bestow them upon you.

My animals were so accustomed to mix among us, that I was frequently forced to make many of them rise before I could reach my tent. I had a few sheep, which I spared as a resource, in case of scarcity; but I constantly kept some old ones to tame the new comers.

The canton in which we resided abounded with three different kinds of partridges; one of which was as large as our pheasant. This was our common food. We put twenty of them into our kettles at once, and they made excellent soup and jelly broth. We also met with a kind of antelope, of the size of our European goats; the skin of which was of a blackish brown colour, with a few white spots on the thighs. I never found any thing more excellent eating. I killed several of them; as well as of another species, much smaller, which I shall hereafter describe.

My stay in this place had greatly increased my collection of insects and of curious birds; and as an inhabitant of the neighbourhood, who was going to the Cape, came to offer me his services, I readily accepted them, and begged him to deliver my small treasure into the hands Mr Boers the fiscal. I had agreed with the latter that I would send him all my novelties as often as an opportunity offered: by this plan, even in the commencement of my journey, I preserved many valuable objects from the danger of accidents, and reserved room for others.

My neighbours now and then sent me vegetables and fruit; and Mr Vanwerck, who lived nearer my camp, knowing

knowing that I was fond of milk, sent me a pailful every evening; which I shared with my people. Kees always perceived the approach of the person who brought it, even at a great distance, and never failed to run to meet him.

From Swellendam, as far as Duyvenochs, the pastures are excellent; and the land, superior to that of the Cape, would produce corn in abundance: but the planters cultivate no more than what is requisite for their own consumption; and the only trade they carry on with the Cape consists in cattle and butter. There are some vineyards to be met with here; but, as the quality of the wine is not good, it is converted into vinegar or spirits, which are sold in the neighbourhood.

On the 27th of the month, observing that the river had subsided a good deal, we crossed it without sustaining any damage. We crossed also the river False; and, after a march of thirteen hours, arrived at the river of Gous or Gourits: at the latter, however, we were stopped; for we found it impossible to cross it, as it was larger than the Seine opposite the king's garden at Paris. Great storms must have inundated the country through which it flows; for at that season it is usually, like the rest, only a rivulet which may be easily forded. Its banks abound with large thorny trees*, and with great numbers of partridges; principally of that large species which are called pheasants by the inhabitants of the Cape. After remaining encamped three days, perceiving no decrease in the river, and being always anxious to penetrate still farther, I could only find one method of extricating myself from this embarrassment. I determined to cause a large raft to be constructed; and, having cut down some trees, we employed the bark of them in making ropes. But what labour did this fatal operation subject us to! We were forced to unload our carriages, to take off their wheels, and to embark them piece by piece. All my animals crossed by swimming; and in several passages I reached the opposite shore, with my people and effects, without the smallest disorder, or the least accident. This attempt, being attended with wonderful success, gave me great confidence respecting the future, and tended greatly to
increase

* The *Mimosa Nilotica*.

increase my courage.—This operation, however, cost us three days continued labour; during which time I was under the necessity of suspending my hunting excursions. I myself set an example to the rest, and handled the axe like the meanest of my Hottentots. I judged the precaution of removing a little farther essentially necessary to our common safety; for the banks of the river which we had left were so parched and barren, that all my oxen must have died of hunger.

Our carriages being again mounted, and well loaded, we pursued our journey, and travelled fourteen leagues in two days, when we found ourselves opposite *Moffel-Baie*, or Muscle Bay, which in charts is called the Bay of Saint Blaize. It is very difficult for ships here to come near the coast, on account of the sharp rocks that border it, the bases of which extend a great way into the sea; but on the northern side there is a small beach, where boats may land with great ease. The environs of this country are interspersed with excellent plantations, which might be a great resource for ships that come hither to water: a salubrious spring, about a thousand paces distant from the sea, would supply them with plenty of water. While we abode in this bay, we found no want of oysters. We frequently fished with a line, and this method alone procured us a great number of excellent fish; what we could not consume, I ordered to be salted. Every night we were alarmed with the cries of hyænas, which seemed to be very furious animals: our oxen were much disturbed by them; but by means of large fires, with which we surrounded our camp, they were prevented from attempting to come near us.

I found, at the distance of a league, a kraal, consisting of four huts, in which was a Hottentot family, not exceeding twenty-five or thirty persons, to whom I gave a small quantity of tobacco in exchange for some mats, which I was very glad to procure. This discovery gave me great pleasure, both on account of the profit which I derived from it, as well as of the agreeable surprise it occasioned. I took much pleasure in contemplating them, for a long time, in their peaceful occupations. They possessed five milch cows, and a small flock of sheep. In the season for working, the men distributed themselves

among the neighbouring plantations, where by their industry they gained enough to procure themselves tobacco, and to render their situation more comfortable. They assured me that, in the large woods with which the sides of all the mountains in this country are covered, elephants and buffaloes were sometimes to be found. Upon this intelligence I instantly began to search the mountains and forests; but my labour was fruitless, for neither I nor my people could meet with any of them. I saw, indeed, the prints of the feet of elephants, but they had been made long before; from which I guessed, what was afterwards told me, that if chance at any time brings one of these animals into this country, the inhabitants assemble, and oblige it to betake itself to flight, if they cannot destroy it.

I left Muscle Bay on the 7th at five in the morning, and at two in the afternoon crossed a river called *Klein-Brak*; it has its source in a wood, rising on a ridge of mountains, which in this place is only a league distant from the sea. Next morning we arrived at a large river, of the same name, which is no more than three leagues from the former. The flowing of the tide renders the water of this river brackish: to cross it without danger, we were obliged to wait for the ebb-tide; and during that interval I procured several sea-fowls, which were very abundant in this canton. I found here thousands of pelicans and flamingoes; the deep rose-colour of the one, and the dull white of the other, exhibited a contrast quite new and curious.

On our quitting the river, we had to ascend a steep and rugged mountain, which at first frightened me not a little; but by the help of patience, care, and time, we left it behind us. When we had entirely reached its top, we were well repaid for all our fatigue, by the noble view which opened on our sight; we had here an opportunity of admiring the most beautiful country in the world. At a distance we perceived that chain of mountains, covered with lofty forests, which bounded our prospect towards the west; and under us we beheld an extensive valley, adorned with agreeable hills, variegated in an infinite number of shapes, and which extend as far as the sea in an undulating manner. Enamelled meads, and the most beautiful

beautiful pastures, still added to this scene of magnificence, with which I was truly enchanted. This country bears the name of *Auteniqua*; which, in the Hottentot idiom, signifies a man loaded with honey. One indeed cannot proceed a step here without seeing a thousand swarms of bees: the flowers on which they feed spring up in myriads; the mixed odours which exhale from them, and which yield a delightful gratification to the smell—their colours, their variety, and the cool and pure air which one breathes—all attract your attention, and suspend your course. Nature has made these enchanting regions like a fairy land. The calices of all these flowers abound with excellent juices, from which the bees compose their honey: they deposit it every where around, in hollow rocks and trees. My people were very desirous of stopping some time in this delightful retreat, but I was afraid it would be to them what Capua was to Annibal's soldiers. Without loss of time, therefore, I gave orders for pursuing our journey, and hastened towards the river Wet-Els, so called from the woods that grow on its banks. From the large brackish river to this place, we had travelled only seven leagues.

On the 9th, we crossed several small rivulets, which, flowing down from the hills, run into the sea through an hundred different channels.

All the streams of these rivulets have the amber colour of Madeira wine, and I found that their taste was ferruginous; but I did not take time to examine whether this taste and colour arose from their flowing through some mine in their way, or from the roots and leaves of trees which they water, and carry along with them. The last post belonging to the Company was not far distant from this place, and we arrived at it after a quick march of three hours. I was now about to withdraw myself from the dominion of man, and to approach a little towards his original condition.

I was received here by Mr Mulder, the commander, who shewed me every mark of friendship. He has under him only a subaltern officer, and about fifteen men, who have all been either soldiers or sailors on board the Company's ships. These people cut down all the wood they have occasion for, and construct the carriages inten-

ded for transporting it : which is a very absurd plan ; for if this timber were deposited at Muscle Bay, a small bark might in one voyage carry more to the Cape, than would be conveyed on carriages in thirty years : this would certainly be a considerable saving to the Company, and a common benefit to the colonies. I may add likewise that the inhabitants of the Cape would not find themselves reduced to the necessity of burning small wood, which they collect at a great expence every where around, by slaves who have no other employment ; a method which costs at least double what is paid for the finest wood in the timber-yards at Paris.

Can it be credited that the directors of the Company, for their own use, should order ships to be sent every year from Amsterdam, loaded with planks and boards of every kind, whilst in this country there are immense forests, and the most beautiful trees in the world ? This absurdity, however, is not at all surprising. The Company gratuitously furnishes the governor and all the officers with whatever wood they need, and it is delivered to them at their houses, without any expence ; the governor therefore has no personal interest to extend his views to this part of the administration, and to abolish an abuse so prejudicial to the colony.

The whole country of Auteniqua, from the chain of mountains to the sea, is inhabited by several planters, who rear a number of cattle, make butter, cut down timber, and gather honey, all of which they transport to the Cape.

I was in some degree filled with indignation to see people, who have wood within their reach, employ it in commerce, and not have the courage to build for themselves habitable houses. They live in miserable habitations, constructed of wicker-work daubed over with clay : the skin of a buffalo, fixed at the four corners to as many stakes, serves them for a bed ; and the door, which is at the same time a window, is shut by a mat ; while two or three old chairs, a few pieces of plank, a kind of table, and a pitiful box two feet square, form all the furniture of these real huts. Thus is the picture of the most profound wretchedness contrasted with the charms of this terrestrial paradise ; for the beauties of these regions,
which

which I have already sketched out, extend even beyond Auteniqua.

These people however live well; they have game and salt-water fish in great plenty; and enjoy exclusively, over all the other cantons of these colonies, the advantage of having the whole year, without interruption, vegetables and plants of every kind in their gardens. For these valuable advantages they are indebted to the excellence of the soil, and to its being naturally watered by small streams, which cross each other in a thousand different directions, and, as one may say, lay the four seasons under contribution to fertilize it. This country may justly be called the *Limagne** of Africa. These streams, which never dry up in this beautiful territory, proceed from a well known cause. The high mountains towards the east, which are covered with forests, stop the clouds and the fogs carried by the east wind from the sea, and this occasions very abundant rains.

It appeared favourable to my views that I should remain some days here with the commander; and in this instance only, I deviated from my plan. Besides particular motives which led me to take this step, I was detained by political reasons, and I could not refuse his invitation with any kind of decency: an order had been every where sent to suffer me to pass, to assist me, and to furnish me with every thing that I should have occasion for. As Mr Mulder occupied the last post, he had received more positive orders than the rest, and I could not help complying with his wishes: the honourable motives of his behaviour were a sufficient invitation to me; and perhaps he himself depended upon the testimony which my gratitude would give in his favour, when I returned to the Cape.

On my arrival at his habitation, I began, as usual, to examine the neighbourhood. In traversing the woods, I met with the traces of buffaloes and elephants, which appeared to be very fresh; I observed some of their dung likewise: and saw a great number of different birds, none of which I had hitherto met with, and among others several touracos. Less than this would have been sufficient

H 3

to

* A French territory, in Lower Auvergne, lying along the river Allier. It is one of the finest and most productive plains in France. T.

to detain me in this spot. At the distance of four or five leagues from the place where Mr Mulder resided, I found, on the edge of a wood, a very commodious and convenient spot for fixing my camp.

As Mr Mulder was about to depart for the Cape, he furnished me with twenty pounds of gunpowder; I likewise embraced this opportunity of writing to my friends, and to send Mr Boers about an hundred birds, and a small box of insects. I added to my train a few oxen, engaged three more Hottentots, purchased a young horse, which I intended to breed to hunting myself; and on the 9th of February bid adieu to Mr and Mrs Mulder, in order, to take possession of my forest, and to establish myself in the place which I had chosen.

I had my people sent beforehand to prepare the place, to hew down a few trees, and to clear away the bushes with which the ground was overspread, that on my arrival I might be able to erect my tents, which I completed in a short time. My kitchen was established under a large tree, that appeared to have grown old there on purpose; and my Hottentots, on their part, built and arranged a few huts as well as they could. At the distance of ten paces from us we had a small stream of water, pure as crystal; and opposite a little hill, covered with excellent grass for our horses and oxen: by these means we kept them always near us. So many advantages united, rendered this an agreeable resting place: but unfortunately we were several times obliged to remove; as the game of all kinds, rendered shy by our continual pursuits, began to grow scarce, and would have left us altogether.

The inhabitants of this district visited me sometimes; which enabled me to procure a sufficiency of fruits, vegetables, milk, and of every thing else they could supply me with: their visits indeed cost me some bottles of spirits; but as I abhor these noxious liquors, and never drank of them, this attraction retained them a little, and the impression which they made on my casks was not deadly.

I conjectured that the wood near which I had placed my camp, would supply me with a few touracos. Being unacquainted with these birds, and having never seen one, I went in search of them, and was fortunate enough to discover a few. I spent a considerable time

in

in pursuing them, but in vain; for as these birds perch always on the extremities of the highest branches, they were never within the reach of my gun. One afternoon, however, I followed one, and did more execution. Hoping from spray to spray, still going only a little way from me, it deceived me for more than an hour, and conducted me to a great distance; till being quite impatient with its sport, and finding that I could not come near it, I fired, though I concluded it to be out of my reach, and had the satisfaction of seeing it drop. On this occasion, my joy was beyond expression: but the most arduous part was not yet completed; it was necessary for me to seize my prey; and, as I had remarked the place where it fell, I rushed through the bushes to take it up, at the expence of having my legs and hands torn, and all besmeared with blood. On reaching the place, I observed nothing; and though I searched with diligence every where around, going backwards and forwards twenty times over the same places, minutely examining the smallest holes and crevices, my labour was fruitless, for I could not find my touraco. My researches and reflections led me to imagine that I had perhaps broken only one of its wings, which had not prevented it to get away from the spot where it had fallen. Full of this idea, I went a little farther, and began again to search all the neighbourhood for more than half an hour; but still no touraco. This disappointment reduced me almost to a state of despair; and the thick bushes, and prickly shrubs, which scratched even my face, had indeed agitated me with transports difficult to be described. To satiate my anger, I am confident that nothing less would have been sufficient at that instant than to pursue a lion or a tiger. That a small bird, which I had brought down after so many embarrassments, and so much desire for it, should escape and thus vanish from my sight, was truly distressing. Unable to contain my passion, I began to stamp, and to beat the ground with my musquet; but the earth sinking suddenly below me, I disappeared also, and fell with my arms into a pit twelve feet deep. My amazement, and the hurt I received by my fall, soon made me forget my anger; and I found myself at the bottom of one of those covered snares which the Hottentots employ
to

to catch ferocious animals, elephants in particular. On recovering from my surprise, I began to consider how I should extricate myself from this embarrassment, extremely happy that I had not been impaled on the sharp-pointed stake placed in the bottom of the pit, and still happier that I found in it no company. However, I was apprehensive that some might arrive every moment; especially if I should be obliged to stay there during the night. Its approach began to terrify me; as it opposed and impeded the only resource I had thought of to save myself from the fatal pit, without the help of others. This resource was to dig away the earth on one side with my sabre and hands, in order to make a sort of steps; but as such a business might be very tedious, I formed, though under the most fearful perplexity, the more prudent resolution of loading my fusée, and of firing shot after shot expecting that I would be heard at my camp. I listened from time to time with the greatest anxiety, and a palpitating heart; and at length had the satisfaction to hear two reports, which filled me with the greatest joy. I then continued firing at intervals, for the direction of those who had answered me which way to pursue their course; and soon after I saw them arrive, all fully armed, but full of distress and uneasiness on my account. They had supposed that I was pursued by some wild animal; but they found me, on the contrary, in the most pitiful situation, and caught foolishly like a fox. Their alarm, however, was soon at an end; they immediately cut a long pole, which they handed down to me; and by this expedient I glided up in the easiest manner I could, and got to the brink of the pit. This trifling accident, from which heaven would not have saved me as it saved young Daniel, did not make me forget my touraco. With my dogs, which had followed my Hottentots, I hoped I should be able to find it out, in whatever place it might be concealed: sending them out, therefore, on the search, they found it squatted down under a tufted bush. I immediately laid my hands upon it: and the pleasure of at length getting this charming animal in my possession, soon obliterated from my mind the dangers and difficulties it had cost me.

I afterwards got as many of them as I wished : I even caught them all alive ; for having noticed, in the stomach of this one, the fruits which they principally feed on, I always had recourse to the trees which produced these fruits, whether I wished to fire or to lay snares for them.

This bird, as agreeable by its shape as by its colour and notes, which are very distinct, unites nimbleness to elegance ; all its motions are lascivious, and its attitudes full of grace. It is of a bright grass green colour ; its head is ornamented with a beautiful tuft of the same colour, bordered with white ; its eyes, which are of a lively red, are crowned with eyebrows of a dazzling white ; and its wings are of the most beautiful purple, which changes to a violet, according to the attitudes it assumes, or the point of view under which it is seen.

This bird, by naturalists, has very improperly been classed among the cuckows, with which it has no relation whatever. The cuckow, throughout the whole world, is a bird that feeds solely on caterpillars, insects, &c. but the touraco feeds on fruits.

In every climate, the cuckow never lays but in the nests of other birds ; which, by these means, she loads with the burden of hatching her young : the touraco, more affectionate and more careful of its family, builds its own nest, where it lays its eggs and hatches them itself.

These two characters are sufficient to form a species quite distinct from the cuckow ; but I shall resume this subject, and enlarge upon it, in my ornithology.

In those intervals when the heavy rains or excessive heats appeared to compel me not to go abroad, which was however very seldom, I did not, on that account, spend my time in indolence. I employed myself, in my tent, in making snares for catching alive, every species of animals. It will hardly be credited that I invented a method of procuring them with my fusée, more entire and in much better condition than those which I caught in my snares : it was in this manner, however, that I got the smallest and most delicate birds.

It is highly necessary that every naturalist who labours himself in forming a collection, should be made acquainted with the method which I *invented*. This expression is
not

not too bold; my idea is positively new, for I never heard that any person ever thought of it before me.

I proceeded in the following manner: I put a smaller or larger quantity of powder into my fusée, according as circumstances might require. I placed immediately above the powder, the end of a candle about an inch thick, ramming it well down; after which I filled the barrel with water up to the mouth. By these means, at the proper distance, when I fired at the bird, I only stunned it, by watering and moistening its feathers: and, as I immediately laid hold of it, no time was allowed it to spoil its plumage by fluttering. The water, impelled by the powder, went directly to the mark; but the piece of tallow, being lighter than the water, did not go so far. In my first attempts it frequently happened, that having sometimes fired too near, or put in too much powder, or too thick a piece of candle, I found the latter whole in the belly of the animal; but after a short apprenticeship I made no more mistakes, and never missed my aim. I have frequently let my fusée remain charged in this manner from morning till night; yet the powder was never damaged, nor did the piece go off less readily. It may readily be supposed that in this manner I never fired horizontally.

After my return to Europe, being one day at the house of a friend, I chanced to mention before some strangers this method which I have described. One of them, who durst not flatly contradict me, or openly avow his incredulity, endeavoured to prove to the rest, by very clear arguments, that my assertion was at least exaggerated. Whilst they were disputing, I retired unobserved by the company; and having prepared a fusée after my own manner, I returned through the garden to the window, where these gentlemen were continuing their dispute. Pointing with my finger to a little bird perched near them, I took aim and fired at it, upon which it fell. I instantly seized it; and, delivering it alive into the hands of my antagonist, put a stop to all his fine reasoning.

About the end of the month we were much impeded by new rains, which lasted a long time, and almost without intermission. These storms succeeded each other with great rapidity: the lightning fell several times in the

the forest near us; the water gained upon us on all sides; and, to add to the disagreeableness of our situation, our camp was in one night quite overflowed: we therefore quitted the wood, and went to establish ourselves on some higher spot in the open country. I now saw, with very great uneasiness, that it would be impossible for us to get out of this place in which we were surrounded: those small rivulets, which had before appeared so pleasant and agreeable to us, were changed into furious torrents, which carried sand, trees, and fragments of rock along with them. I was sensible that, unless I exposed myself to the utmost dangers, it would be impracticable to cross them. On the other hand my oxen, harraised and chilled with cold, had deserted my camp; nor did I know how or which way to send after them to find them. My situation was very uncomfortable; and I passed many moments in great dejection. My poor Hottentots, fatigued and sick, began already to murmur. We had no more provisions, and no more game: what we killed was hardly sufficient for our subsistence; because, confined by the torrent, which increased more and more every day, we could not have recourse to our neighbours for assistance. How distressing our condition with such preparations! It might have been said that an universal deluge was likely to inundate Africa. I however retained my apprehensions to myself; as I saw my sad companions casting their restless looks upon me, and witnessing by their silence what doubts they entertained for themselves. Never did a sight appear more gloomy: our charming walks, laid under water, were in an instant destroyed; and those delightful gardens were changed into a gloomy and inhospitable desert. Thus distressed, collecting all my forces, I besought my friends to search, at least, for our lost and scattered oxen; and to determine upon crossing one of the torrents, whatever might be the event. By the most uncommon caprice of fortune, the fatal event which threatened us with immediate destruction, was in part the occasion of our safety. One of my Hottentots, in looking for a passage, noticed a buffalo in the middle of the water, which had probably been drowned the preceding evening, for it was still quite fresh: on this discovery he came, shouting for joy, to bring us the agreeable tidings; and

and nothing indeed could have happened more seasonably. We dragged the animal to the shore, with considerable danger; cut it to pieces on the spot; and, having carried off the soundest parts, left the remainder to my dogs; and as they had fasted a long time, they found great relief in this repast. We saw them return from their feast with their bellies so stuffed that they could scarcely walk. I cannot avoid mentioning another circumstance, as it will tend to convey a still better idea of the terrible situation to which we were reduced. These dogs, which were now like walking skeletons, watching our motions, followed closely at our heels when ever any of us retired to ease the wants of nature; and I have seen them fight desperately with one another for this disgusting nourishment.

There is nothing in this life durable; a period is allotted to misfortunes as well as to happiness. The end of March brought a change of weather; the rains grew less frequent, the torrents subsided; and I sent four Hottentots in quest of my oxen, which they brought almost all back, after an absence of four days. Some of them had returned the way we came, and had even repassed the large brackish river; others had taken shelter in different plantations, and some had shifted for themselves in the best manner they could.—Four of them, however, were missing, which could not be found, nor did I ever afterwards hear any more of them. Without delay I prepared to leave this inhospitable country, and to transport my camp three leagues farther, to a hill named *Pampoenkraal*. I took advantage of two days of fine weather to dry my effects, great part of which were moist and half rotten; and the skin of the buffalo which we had flayed, served to renew the traces of my waggons and carriages, which the moisture had rendered useless. Notwithstanding these continual rains, and my cruel disappointments, I was still capable of making some efforts. In the woods we had met with an old tree, the trunk of which was hollow; and I went thither with my fusée almost every day, to watch for such small birds or game as might appear. I was there sheltered at least from the rain, and I supported my courage with hope. From this sacred niche I brought down, without mercy, every thing that presented itself to my view. Thus the study of Nature engaged my

my attention, in preference to more pressing wants. Continually inflamed with the powerful desire of robbing her of her treasures, I was dying with hunger, and yet thought of my collections. In spite of all obstacles I saw my riches gradually increase: I had acquired a small collection of rare objects altogether unknown in Europe, which I exposed to the air; and I found that they were not so much damaged by the moisture as the rest of my effects. In this wood we met with no game but the bosbok antelope, and a smaller species, which I have already spoken of. On the plain, besides the three species of partridges before-mentioned, we saw another called the *red pheasant*, because its feet and the naked skin of its throat are of that colour. Of carnivorous animals we saw tigers and hyænas, but not one lion.

The heavens became every day more and more serene, and appeared to presage that our situation would soon be as happy as it had been miserable and gloomy. I was much pleased with the hill of Pampoen-Kraal, on which I had placed my camp. At a little distance from my tent stood a small eminence, crowned by a thicket of thirty or thirty-five feet in diameter. The trees and shrubs of which it was composed, in growing had so interwoven their branches, that the whole had the appearance of one very thick and bushy body. Supposing that I might convert it into a little palace, I ordered a path to be traced out to its center, and the branches to be lopped off on each side to the height of a man, so as to afford an easy passage. In the middle of the thicket, by the force of labour and employing the hatchet, we were able to cut out two chambers perfectly square; in one of which I placed my table and my chair: this was my study. The second I ornamented with my kitchen utensil: but this did not prevent me from making use of it at the same time as a dining room. These two apartments, naturally covered with branches and leaves impenetrably thick, afforded me a delightful and cool retreat, when harassed and covered with sweat and dust, after my hunting excursion in the morning, I retired from the heat of the day and the scorching rays of the sun. When fatigue had whetted my appetite, what delightful repasts! when sleep stole upon me, what voluptuous and gentle repose!

—Ye sumptuous grottoes of our financiers! ye English gardens twenty times changed with the wealth of the citizen! why do your streams, your cascades, your pretty serpentine walks, your broken bridges, your ruins, your marbles, and all your fine inventions, disgust the taste and fatigue the eye, when we know the verdant and natural bower of the Pampoen Kraal?

Though I could not leave this delightful solitude, without much regret, I was however forced to think of departing. Having one day traversed the whole neighbourhood, to discover what tract I ought to follow, in order to travel with most ease and safety, I found, about a league from my camp, a very rapid torrent, called *Kayman's Hole*; though I know not the reason, as in this whole country I never saw either a kayman or a crocodile. This rivulet gushed out from two mountains not very high, but exceeding steep: on the right hand I had the sea, about a thousand paces distant; and on the left woods and mountains, which we could not pass with the cattle and carriages: there was no other resource therefore for me, but to pass the dangerous Kayman's Hole. On this account I was very uneasy, and indeed vexed. Let the reader only conceive my situation—stopped thus every step I moved; and, one obstacle no sooner overcome, than new ones still starting up before me, while I was fully convinced of the necessity of penetrating farther. The torrent seemed to me too much swelled, and too rapid, to attempt the crossing it. I was, in a particular manner, afraid for my oxen; and rafts could only have been used in transporting my effects. I was therefore forced to arm myself with patience, and to wait for a more favourable opportunity.

I received an express on the 18th of April, from Mr Mulder, who, having returned from the Cape, brought me some letters which he had carried along with him, and which were answers to those I had entrusted to his care about the beginning of February. I learned that my friends were very uneasy about me, and anxious for my return. Others advised me to persevere; and, while they sat at ease by their fire sides, gave themselves little uneasiness about any obstacles, provided my journey could prove beneficial to science; or, without going so far,

far, furnish food for their curiosity, in fables related after their own manner. I observed that each of them were interested according to his own particular views: but I determined to follow my own original plan. It may be easily conceived how much the bad season had hindered my progress, since I had not travelled above eight leagues during all the time which Mr Mulder had taken in his journey to the Cape. In a letter which I received from this gentleman, he appointed a place of meeting, and proposed that we should entertain ourselves a few days with fishing upon the sea coast, if such an excursion would not put me out of order: he promised to bring with him nets, and every thing requisite for our spending a week together on the coast; and he likewise told me that his wife would be one of the party. This proposal gave me great satisfaction; and, soon after the messenger's arrival, Mr and Mrs Mulder made their appearance, together with an officer next in command under Mr Mulder. One might have compared them to so many patriarchs on a journey. The latter riding on the bow of his saddle, upon his pistols, carrying a young infant four months old, which his wife suckled. They were all four on horseback. His carriage, together with his nets and baggage, had gone to attend us on the sea shore. Having ordered one of mine to be got ready at same time, I loaded it with my tent, a few empty casks, and every thing that I thought would be of service to us for our miraculous fishing. When we arrived at the shore, after a few compliments and the customary ceremonies, we threw our nets several times into the water, but always without success; we scarcely caught any thing: and the exercise afforded us no amusement. Determining, therefore, to go on a little further, to a small lake formed by the tide, where we expected to be more successful, we began to march on; but, as I was by no means so curious in fishes as in birds, I should have been soon wearied of our sport, had not the politeness of my friends, and the open and easy cheerfulness of the ladies, engaged my attention a little. I however rambled a good deal about on foot, from one side to another, examining every part around with eager eyes, and not allowing either the air, roads, or trees, to escape my observation.

observation. Having reached the banks of the lake, I sought for a convenient spot where I might pitch my tents: but an alarm, which we little expected, had nearly deranged all our grotesque cavalcade. In passing a spot covered with very high and thick reeds, the workmen suddenly came upon a buffalo, which had lain down there to rest. They were so near, that the animal, fully as much frightened as they were by this unexpected appearance, in retiring threw down the horse of the under commander, and that of his wife. The consternation now became general; every one attempted to fly, and to make off as quickly as possible. Mr Mulder's people, who were not much accustomed with buffaloes, being nearer the water, plunged into it up to the neck. Mine, more accustomed to hunting, put on a bold look; but the animal, terrified by the sight of so many people on every side, and not knowing where to fly, continued motionless, posted up against an enormous rock. Upon hearing the noise, I immediately ran up; but unfortunately I had only my double barrell'd fufee. It was not to be expected that a common ball would kill a buffalo. I however ventured to go near him, and to fire. The moment I had discharged my piece he left his station, and in a furious manner came straight on towards me; but the second ball, which hit him, immediately damped his courage: he turned about, and passing near one of the oxen, which carried our kitchen apparatus, discharged all his fury on this quiet animal, gave it two blows in the belly with his horns, and soon ran out of sight. I could not prevail upon the company to continue longer here. The husbands were much afraid about their wives; and, as I conjectured by the disorder of their looks that they were really affected by their tender alarms, I recommended to them to return to our first fishing place on the sea shore. In our second attempt we were more fortunate; and we had the satisfaction of catching so many fish, that I ordered some of them to be salted, and to be packed into my casks, whilst Mr Mulder followed my example. This sport, which continued eight days completely, and the occupations with which it furnished us, amused us indeed much more than I had supposed. From time to time I left the company for a little, and I killed several
uncommon

uncommon birds ; but I was not now obliged to contend with a second buffalo. When we had salted all our fish, we divided our provision, and took leave of one another : but I acknowledge that I could not leave these worthy people without regret ; for they had enlivened our little excursion with a pleasantness very natural, simple, and mild. I followed with my eyes their little caravan ; and I did not quit it till I had entirely lost them.

When I went again to my camp, I found every thing in order ; my cattle properly taken care of, and my people occupied on their duty, for which I testified my satisfaction to them.

I left to Mr Mulder the care of all the animals I had preserved since I sent off my last cargo, as well as the living touracos I had caught in gins ; which he engaged to transmit to Mr Boers at the Cape. He had also the politeness to give me one of his nets, and to send me a pair of wheels which I bought from him. As my cart was far from convenient, and always ready to be overturned, I determined to mount it in the same manner with the rest of my carriages.—This being a labour of great necessity, we set about it instantly ; and every one took his part in the work. The timber necessary for this operation was soon cut out ; and in less than a fortnight our cart, changed into a waggon, rolled upon four wheels. It did not indeed in its construction discover the hand of a master ; but it did my purpose equally well ; and I must remark that all the fortnight was not occupied in altering it. When I observed that it went well, and that my cart-wrights would gain credit by it, I sent a detachment of my people to the neighbourhood of the torrent, which we were about to cross, with orders to fill up the apertures, and repair the highways which the waters had spoilt. I caused them carry stones and large branches of trees with them, to make the quagmires passable ; which, without this precaution, might have disjoined, and even broken my carriages. When by means of excessive labour we had smoothed every pass, on the 30th of April I made my caravan file off before me ; and casting my eye, for the last time, on the charming hermitage of Pampoen-Kraal, left it with the same regret as that with which a lover leaves his mistress. I often afterwards en-

quired about this happy asylum; and I had the satisfaction to learn that it had not only been respected, but that the Hottentots had named it in remembrance of me.

In spite of all my precaution, I found great difficulty at *Kayman's Hole*, as well as at a river named by the Hottentots in their language *Krakede-Kau*, which is the *girls ford*. This country was of old inhabited by Hottentots, who are all now dead or dispersed: the deep pits which are to be seen at certain distances, evidencing that they were hunters; and that they caught buffaloes and elephants in their snares: but these animals are seldom or never now seen in this canton.

After travelling eight hours, we came near the *Swarte Rivier*, or Black River: as it was still swelled by the rains, we were forced to cross it on rafts, which we erected as formerly. The fresh traces of buffaloes which we noticed on the other side made us continue here some time: and I at length had the satisfaction to kill one; a Hottentot I took along with me, killed also another. I was so pleased with my good fortune, that I immediately returned to my camp, to mention this agreeable news, which promised a supply of provision to my people for a considerable time, if we should be reduced to distress. As we had killed these two animals on the borders of the river, above the place where I had settled, I ordered them to be pushed into the stream, which carried them opposite to my tent, where they were cut up: and I desired they should be cut into very small pieces, that they might be more easily salted, and exposed afterwards to the air and the sun. Our waggons, together with the bushes and trees which surrounded us, were all loaded with bloody remainders of our buffaloes; but suddenly, in the midst of our work, and when we were not expecting it, we found ourselves attacked by flights of kites and vultures; which, without any dread, perched among us. The kites, especially, were the most impudent. They rapaciously seized upon the morsels of flesh, and even fought furiously with my people. When each of them had carried away a pretty large piece, they retired to some branch, about ten paces from us, and devoured it in our sight. Though we fired our fuses, they were not alarmed, but returned perpetually to the charge; so that,

that, finding that I spent my powder in vain, we resolved to disperse them, and drive them away with large poles, until our provisions should be perfectly dry. This manœuvre, which for a long time distressed my people, did not prevent us from being plundered without mercy; but, had we not used it, nothing absolutely would have remained of our two buffaloes.

I ordered the tongues to be smoked; and I never neglected to follow the same plan with those of all the animals I afterwards killed. This was a very great delicacy; and a resource for me when our provisions ran short. When disposed to indulge in sensuality, or to whetten my appetite, I added a small plateful of it to my common allowance. The tongues of elephants only I did not incline to preserve in this manner: their taste, and even their shape, always disgusted me in a manner which I could never get the better of, and which it would be very hard to give any reason for.

So soon as our provisions were ready and packed up, we left the Black River; and having passed the *Goucom*, two leagues distant we reached the *Ayseno*, after travelling two leagues more. The latter is a considerable stream, and was still swelled by the tide — Hitherto I had seen no spot more agreeable for settling my camp. Here I had a most charming meadow of about a thousand feet square; a forest of tall trees made a magnificent shelter on the south, extending round towards the east; on the north I had the river before me, which seemed to be well stored with fish; and a variety of small game swarmed upon its banks. So many advantages might have almost made me forget Pampoen-Kraal; but all its attractions could not induce me to stop. Vexed with a secret uneasiness, I observed on the opposite side of the river a difficult mountain, which it was unavoidable for us to pass. It was so remarkably steep, that I dreaded some accident would befall me; for an internal foreboding seemed strongly to indicate it. I had indeed nearly lost, in one moment, all the fruits of my labours, and of my incredible fatigues. I had taken the prudent precaution to carry my waggons one after the other; for, had I attempted to make them mount together, I should not have had oxen sufficient to draw them. I ordered twenty to be yoked

yoked to my *maſter waggon*; which, as I have already mention'd, carried all my artillery and my principal riches. My oxen proceeded; and, by climbing with great exertion, had almoſt got to the top: but the chain which kept the firſt eighteen together breaking all of a ſudden, the waggon rolled down with great precipitation to the foot of the hill, carrying with it the two oxen yoked to the pole. From the height on which we ſtood, my conductors and I followed it with our eyes, almoſt petrified with fear, and in the moſt terrible agitation.—Many a time did we perceive it ready to fall over the precipice that bordered the way: and this miſfortune would have certainly taken place, if it had not been for the ſuperior ſtrength of the two oxen attached to the pole, which nothing could overcome. If this accident had happened, it would entirely have ſuſpended my journey. My carriage, and my moſt valuable effects, would have been daſhed to pieces; my powder, my ſhot, and my muſquets, would have been ſcattered: and I ſhould have been totally ruined without any reſource. The waggon was, however, ſtopped by a rock on the banks of the torrent. We deſcended with ſhouts of joy; and collecting my effects, put every thing in its proper place, and again yoked the oxen to this fatal carriage; which, without danger, in an hour regained what it had loſt in ten minutes. The reſt, being not quite ſo heavy, arrived in perfect ſafety. I had ordered the traces to be doubled, and four men to attend the wheels, all ready to put their hands to the ſpokes on the leaſt jolt. The road however was ſo ſteep, that this would not have prevented a fall; but it would have leſſened the rapidity of it, and given us time to direct the carriage in ſuch a manner, as beſt to avoid the dreadful precipice.

Fear, as a magnifying glaſs, always enlarges objects. Mine had announced ſomething very unfortunate. It would be in vain to attempt to paint my looks, and the agitation of my mind, in this diſtreſſing moment. I involuntarily followed all the motions of the waggon, and appeared to ſet it right by thoſe of my body, and by the geſtures of my arms. Each jolt went to the bottom of my heart.

Our

Our loss however turned out to be less than I was afraid of. I might indeed almost say that a miracle was wrought in my favour; and I perceived that the god of the fatal trident did not always pursue me. I found that not only my carriage had escaped with very little damage, but the shocks it sustained had not materially deranged what it contained. My oxen, which were dragged backwards by a waggon of nearly two tons weight, and which might have been dashed to pieces before they got to the foot of the mountain, escaped with only a few dangerous wounds, which did not prevent them from continuing their labour. It must be owned that our misfortune, making allowance for the loss of time, was but very little; though we had every reason to fear for the future.

In proportion as I got at a distance from the plantations, and advanced into the country, every thing assumed a new appearance in my eyes. The prospects became more magnificent; the soil appeared to be more rich and fruitful; nature seemed to be more grand and majestic; and the lofty mountains presented, on all sides, more charming and delightful points of view, than I had ever seen. These scenes, contrasted with the dry and parched fields of the Cape, made me think that I was more than a thousand leagues from it. "What!" said I, in my ecstasy, "shall lions and tigers be the eternal inhabitants of these superb regions? What speculator, with the sordid view only of establishing a kind of center for commerce, could have preferred the stormy Table Bay to the innumerable roads, and natural and commodious harbours, which are to be met with on the eastern coasts of Africa?"

Thus did I reflect within myself, whilst climbing the mountain on foot, and forming vain wishes for the conquest of this delightful country, which the indolent policy of the European nations will perhaps never gratify.

We still continued to advance, having always to the west that great chain of mountains, covered with wood, which we had before observed at a great distance. After travelling four hours and a half, we halted at a small rivulet about three leagues distant from the sea. Here we saw a prodigious quantity of fish floating up with the tide;

tide; and as soon as we saw them in a state of stagnation, the net which I had received from Mr Mulder was immediately extended across the stream. This was the first time I employed it; and being too long, it was found necessary to have it doubled. Were I to mention the number of fish which remained when the tide ebbed, I should be considered as an extravagant exaggerator: I shall only say that the net suffered considerably. My people cooked these fish with a variety of sauces: as for me, I kept about an hundred for myself, which, with different spices, I put into a kettle without any water; and having hermetically sealed the coverlid with a kind of viscous earth, I buried the whole under hot ashes. By this arrangement I had an excellent dish of fish, with which I could scarcely be satiated; and which lasted me for a good time.

A more agreeable and advantageous spot could not be chosen, than that upon which I then stood, for erecting a thriving colony. The sea advances through an opening of about a thousand paces broad, and penetrates into the country to the distance of more than two leagues and a half. The basin which it forms extends more than a league; and all the coast, both on the right and the left, is lined with rocks, which intercept all communication with it. The land, both rich and fruitful, is watered by limpid and refreshing streams, which flow down on every side from the eastern mountains. These mountains, which are crowned with majestic woods, reach as far as the basin, winding about with a number of sinuosities; which form an hundred groves, naturally variegated, and every one more agreeable than another. In this spot I saw a great number of small white herons, of the same kind as those sent from Cayenne, and which I had often seen, when young, in Surinam. I found also the large egret*, but it was scarcer here.

The woods produce small game in great abundance: buffaloes, and sometimes elephants, are also found in them. Two or three houses, the inhabitants of which have no other occupation but to carry on a dull and laborious trade in wood and butter with the Cape, are seen here;

* A species of the heron.

here; but dispersed at a very great distance from one another.

I remained in this delightful country till the 13th. We then passed by very disagreeable roads, a forest called *Le Poort*; and, after travelling seven hours more, arrived at the river *Witte Drest*. In several places I observed a few more dwellings no less miserable and wretched than the others; for the distance, the dangers of the journey, and other obstacles insuperable to these poor people, do not suffer them, except very rarely, to drive a few oxen to the Cape: and, even when they come there, they are in a bad condition; and on that account the owners of them make a very bad market, and are as ill paid. When I passed here, many of these people had not been at the Cape for many years.

I still advanced, but whether it was that weariedness, and the repeated disappointments I successively experienced, had hurt my health; or that I was forced to pay tribute to these new climates, and that their temperature made a strong impression on my constitution—I was often seized with sudden sickness, and tormented with the gloomy idea that I should leave my ashes two thousand leagues from my family. My imagination, too lively, still increased this misfortune; and I gave place to dejection and despair. The most dismal melancholy took possession of my mind; for I now saw myself in fact stopped in my progress. I was afflicted with extreme headaches, an extraordinary heaviness, and a general uneasiness, that seemed to threaten very serious danger. This was the only accident I feared when I set out. I found it would be incumbent on me to stop, that I might refresh my strength: and I at last formed the resolution; satisfied that the most acute disorder must here, as well as among physicians nostrums, take a happy turn, or give relief to the patient by death.

I therefore dragged myself along, as well as I could, and took a transient view of the environs. Having noticed an agreeable situation for my camp, near a small rivulet, I ordered my tents to be pitched at the edge of a wood. I knew nothing of the practice of physic, but regimen and rest; my people still knew less; and, if my distemper increased, I was likely in their hands to run
very

very great hazard. I became so very weak, that I was forced to remain abed in my waggon, which the heat of the sun made like a burning furnace. I was distressed with tormenting pains in my bowels; a violent dysentery ensued; and I heard my people, in their turn, complain one after another of the same distress. Supposing then that this kind of epidemia was owing to the great quantity of salt fish which we had eaten, I ordered that the remainder of it should be burnt. In the mean while I was consumed by a constant fever; but did not wholly lose my strength: and, after a copious perspiration during twelve days, rest, and a proper regimen, my health was re-established. I took moderate exercise, calmed my spirits, and soon found that I every day got better. The same regimen recruited all my people. I did not neglect to add to the list of the grand and sublime discoveries in medicine, the warm bath: and I am fully convinced that to this bath, or good fortune, I am indebted for my life.

When I got perfectly well, I resumed my usual employments, exercise and hunting. In my first excursion, I found that we had a second river on our flank, called *Queur-Boom*, which falls from the western mountains, and is joined by the Witte-Dreft about a league from the sea, The mouth of it is near a bay, which navigators call the Bay of Agoa. In a journey which governor Blettenberg of the Cape made to this place, he ordered his name, the year and day of his arrival, to be engraven on a stone column. I examined this wretched monument, which needed only an inscription in verse to render it still more despicable. This name now reigns in all the colonies; and the Bay of Agoa is distinguished by that of *Blettenberg's Bay*. Thus a paltry post, established by the vanity of an individual, in a moment gives rise to errors which disconcert conventions before received; and at the same time overthrows opinions generally adopted by the people. In the neighbourhood of our camp there happened to be a flock of about twenty-five or thirty bubales in a place inclosed by the sea and our two rivers; and as our camp was so placed, that it filled all the remaining space for them to escape by, these animals were wholly at our mercy. Considering them therefore as part of our live stock, we did not spare them; for, no sooner did

did our provisions begin to fall low, than we brought down a couple of them. None of them escaped us; and their skins, when sewed together, made an excellent covering for the waggon I had repaired at Pampoenkraal.

As large parties of buffaloes came to browse in our sight, on the other side of the Queur-Boom, we gave chase to them, and caught a good many of them.

This animal is uncommonly wild, and one needs attack it with great precaution in the woods; but in the open fields it is not formidable. It is afraid of, and flies from the presence of a man. The safest method of catching it, is to harass it with dogs. Whilst it is employed in defending itself, a bullet in the head, or the omoplate, will instantly kill it. The bullets to be employed must be of a large size, and made either of tin or of lead. If the animal is not wounded in the two places above mentioned, it will make its escape.

The horns are very large and spreading. By the closeness of their roots to one another, on the fore head, one would almost suppose that they spring from the same root. The buffalo is much stouter and bigger than the finest oxen in Europe; and I imagine with many travellers, that it would not be impracticable to render it tame and submissive to the yoke. That this attempt hath never yet been successful, is but a weak objection; for improper experiments are no proof. Such an enterprise, indeed, would need time, knowledge, and art; and ought not to be left to the indolence of an ignorant planter, accustomed often to see insurmountable obstacles in a trifling difficulty. This speculation is worthy of the important views of a Company who are always endeavouring to extend every branch of industry and commerce. Were some of these animals taken when very young, and put into proper inclosures, and were they gradually taught to come and receive some favourite food from their keeper, they would soon kiss the hand which feeds them. As they grew up, they would produce young; which taught by their mothers, would imitate their example, and become still more familiar. Why should we not suppose that, at the third generation, the manners of the buffalo would be meliorated, when we every day see wild bears, taken

from the hills of Savoy, cross our streets, dance, leap, salute people, and in a word submit to the orders of their conductor with the most timid submission to his avaricious caprice.

All animals with horns and cloven feet have generally a haggard eye, which gives them a frightful appearance: but, as in carnivorous and sanguinary animals, this is no mark of fury, on the contrary it discovers terror and fear. They have neither the deep cunning, nor the mischievous inclination, of the lion, the tiger, or even the elephant. Indeed, they have no use for them; the vegetables upon which they browse do not occasion much heat in their bowels: they are very wild, but fearful. In this apparent contrast I see nothing opposite to nature, and I observe one of the most striking features of man.

It is not my purpose to enter here into an examination of those complicated shades, hitherto so little observed, which distinguish savage animals from one another. It is always either a regard to their own safety, or the inclination of providing for their own subsistence, which leads them to ferocity; but being, like us, subjected to passions variously united, they proceed to it by different method. This examination, disconnected with a work merely historical, I shall delay for my description of animals.

I had not yet closely surveyed the bay, which is very improperly named Blettemberg. The attention which I paid to my health, at the end of my disorder, had hitherto prevented my examining it; and, when I went thither for the first time, I was much astonished to find that it was only a very open road, scarcely penetrating into the country at all. It is very wide, and has a sufficient depth of water for the largest vessels; the anchoring ground is secure; and, by means of boats, they may be easily conducted to a beautiful part of the shore, which is not inclosed with the rocks that abound there, as they are all detached from each other. By proceeding a league from the coast, the crews would come to the mouth of the Queur-Boom, where they would find water. Refreshments might be bought from the inhabitants of the environs; and the bay would furnish fish, with which it abounds; as well as excellent oysters, with
which

which all the rocks are overspread. This bay is one of those places where government ought to erect warehouses and repositories for timber: the forests all around are magnificent; and they could be more readily cut down than any where else: for it is not to steep hills that one must go in quest of wood, as in the country of Auteniqua; it is here quite at hand. Warehouses, as I have said, ought to be built close by the bay; and, during the fine monsoon, it might be carried to the Cape in a short time, and without any risk. This easy plan would open the eyes of the inhabitants to their own interest: the exportation would be renewed, and would soon increase. These inexhaustible lands once cultivated, besides affording hopes of plentiful crops, would draw thither a great many intelligent planters, on account of the ready communication which they could have with the Cape: and these people would get from all parts necessaries and conveniencies which they must now renounce; because, to find them, it is necessary to go more than an hundred and fifty leagues into the country. Were this scheme put in practice, these honest Dutchmen would no longer be loudly and sincerely wishing that some nation would form a settlement in their neighbourhood, and furnish them with those articles which contribute to the comfort of life, and the advantage of society. It would also, at the same time, extend the treasures of commerce, at the Bay of Agoa. These wishes, so opposite to their political interest, could not be gratified without destroying them. The Company have only to form here a proper establishment. To the general profits of such an institution would be added those of individuals, which behoved to be of importance. They might, for instance, cut down a certain tree, named *flinking wood*, and export it to Europe, where it would without doubt soon be preferred to every other sort cabinet-makers make use of.

The advantages which would accrue to the Company and the colony from this beautiful country, could not surely have escaped the governor, who made a journey hither. But in settlements, the prosperity of which depends upon a few united together, and interested in counteracting every plan that would tend to diminish their profits, what is a governor? A very passive Being; in-

dolent as to the general good, and actuated solely by a regard to his own private interest. Consenting to a sort of exile for a limited time, he privately settles in his own mind, as the first article of his contract, that, as he must make a fortune in a hurry, every plan of procuring it is honourable and lawful. Full of these ideas, when he comes to the seat of his government, where he finds every thing adapted to his views, he exercises his rapacity with impunity; when he returns to his own country, he insults his fellow-citizens by insolent parade: and he undoubtedly never thinks of opening the eyes of his employers, as to those improvements and regulations which would soon increase the happiness of a populous colony.

I cannot help thinking that colonies, managed by exclusive companies, are like those public carriages which circulate through all Europe, conveying passengers and goods at the same time; provided the latter arrive safe, the proprietors give themselves very little trouble whether the poor travellers who descend from the coach have their limbs broken or not.

Near this bay I found means to increase my collection with several beautiful birds; and even with some new species, which were common in the woods here: but I was anxious above all, to procure one which more than once put my patience to the trial, and had like to have cost me very dear. It was a bald buzzard*, of a most beautiful species. This bird, which is of the genus of the eagle, is almost as large as the ospray. Every day I observed it hovering over my camp, but at such a distance as to be beyond the reach of a ball. I however constantly observed its motions; and made a person always watch, and never lose sight of it. One day that I had passed over the Queur Boom, while walking along the bank opposite to that on which my camp was situated, I perceived a number of heads, fragments of large fishes, and the bones and remains of small antelopes, strewed on the ground, near the rotten trunk of an old tree. I instantly concluded that this must be the place where two of these bald-buzzards had erected their fishery, or at least their ordinary haunt; and it was not long before I observed them soaring round in the air, at a very great height.

* By some naturalists named the *sea eagle*. T.

height. I instantly concealed myself in a thick bush; but this scheme was not executed with sufficient alertness to elude the piercing eyes of these two eagles. They no doubt observed me; for they did not come down. The day following, and several days successively, I returned to my station, by day-break. I posted myself in the thicket, but all my vigilance was in vain. This business was very laborious: because, to go and return, I was forced to pass the river twice; and at these times it was necessary to wait for the ebb tide.

Wearied out at length, as I wasted my time without being able to succeed, I carried two Hottentots with me; and passing the river, in the middle of the night, I led them to a spot near the trunk of the old tree, where I caused them dig a hole three feet wide and four feet deep. When it was dug, I placed myself in it; and having ordered them to cover the hole over my head with a few sticks, a piece of a mat, and some earth, I kept only a small opening, large enough for me to put my fusée through it, and to see the old trunk. I then ordered my people to return to the camp. Day approached, but the cruel birds did not appear. The earth appearing to be lately thrown up, had no doubt rendered them suspicious; and this was a circumstance which did not at first occur to me. At the close of the night, I came out from my hole, and went to spend a few hours at my camp; after which I went again, and buried myself as before. This scheme I continued for two days together, very patiently. During that time, the sun had dried the ground, and made it all of one colour. About noon the third day, I observed the female flying above the tree, upon which she soon lighted, holding a very large fish in her claws. I instantly fired; and had the satisfaction to see her fall, flapping her wings: but before I could disengage myself from my mat, and the earth with which I was covered, she so far regained her strength as to fly; and, skimming the surface of the river, got to the opposite side, where she lay down and died.

The transport which I enjoyed on finding myself in possession of this bird was so great, that, not observing that the tide was up, I cast myself into the water, with my gun on my shoulder; and was insensible of my folly,

till in the middle of the water I found myself up to the chin. To increase my misfortune, I was by myself, and entirely unacquainted with swimming. Had I endeavoured to return, the rapidity of the current would have certainly thrown me down. Without knowing what was to be the issue, I pursued my journey, as it were, mechanically; and was lucky enough to reach the opposite bank: another inch would have certainly drowned me. I seized my bald-buzzard; and the satisfaction of securing my prey, soon effaced every recollection of fear and danger. I was, however, forced to pull off all my clothes, and to spread them out to dry: in the mean while I amused myself in examining my prize; and, when my clothes were fully dry, I returned without harm to my habitation. When I came, I was informed that several of my people were out in pursuit of a buffalo, which they had met with; and, about evening, I saw them return, loaded with the limbs of the animal, which they had cut up on the spot. Very early next morning, I did not fail to send in search of the other parts, which they had left to attract birds of prey. By this plan I procured the male bald buzzard also; which differed in nothing from the female, but the general distinction of carnivorous birds, that of being a full third smaller. I shall give a figure and description of the latter, by the name of *Vocifer*.

That very morning, as I was sitting quietly in my chair, at the door of my tent, having a table before me upon which I was dissecting my bald buzzard, an antelope, of that species called the *besbock*, quickly crossed my camp, and passed through among my carriages; while my dogs, which had first observed it, and which attempted to oppose it, were not able to cause it alter its route. After this alarm, it ran immediately towards a net spread out to dry, by the side of my camp; tore it to pieces; carried away some remainders of it: and, pursued by all the pack, threw itself quickly into the river. At the same moment I saw nine wild dogs arrive, which had very probably been in chace of it, and which were following its steps. On seeing my camp, these animals stopt short, and, making a little round tour, came to a small hillock, upon which I had posted myself; and from which, as well as I, they could see their prey seized by my dogs
and

and Hottentots, who did their utmost to snatch it from the teeth of the former, and to bring it alive to me. They were indeed successful, after having fastened its legs. Nothing could be more agreeable than to see the simple look of these wild dogs; which being quiet spectators of this provoking scene, had not lost the eminence; and, sitting on their rumps in a melancholy posture, sufficiently discovered by their impatient gestures what ideas they entertained of our injustice, and of their own title to the repast which we had deprived them of. I was very anxious to catch one of them, and some of my people crept softly along on purpose to reach them; but being more cunning than we, they dreaded their manœuvres, and made off with all speed. I fired a bullet after them, to thank them for the service they had done us; but, as it did not take effect, I might as well have saved myself the pains. This antelope I endeavoured to keep, and to tame; but it was so very wild, the sight of the dogs filled it with so much terror, and it struggled so hard, and made so many violent motions, that it must undoubtedly have destroyed itself. To save it therefore from this torture, we killed and feasted on it.

This occurrence, afforded subject for my wits to exercise their genius on, for more than eight days; and they laughed heartily at the poor wild dogs for having raised the game, to see themselves so quickly deprived of it.

It must however be confessed, that, had not my dogs been supported by the Hottentots, they never could have secured the antelope; for, though there were more of them than the wild dogs, the latter were stouter, fiercer, and bolder. I shall afterwards have occasion to mention them, and to rectify a great many mistakes as to them, which have been circulated and confirmed by men of the first talents. But how can people speak with any certainty as to objects which they have never seen themselves, the rather when they copy the accounts of others who are equally strangers to them.

I formed several encampments until the 15th of June, in the neighbourhood of the Bay in different spots. Determined to prosecute my journey into the country, between the chain of mountains and the sea, I went to-examine

mine the route : I attempted, but in vain, to find a place where my carriages could easily pass over ; for the forests were so extensive, and so thick, that it was not possible to penetrate through them. My Hottentots, on their part, were not more lucky in their researches than I was : we could absolutely discover no outlet. I resolved therefore to cross the chain of mountains ; but to effect this, it was still necessary that I should find the entrance of a passage, where my unlucky oxen might be able to keep their feet. In vain did I pass over, run, and search every where about us ; for nothing appeared to my view but bare rocks, to whatever side I turned. Without knowing it, we had entangled ourselves in a kind of hollow valley, without an opening, from which we could not get out but by returning the very way we had come in. This method we were obliged to pursue ; and we again found ourselves at the wood of Poort, which we had only a month before set out from.

Such is the fortunate instability of the human mind, that little is sometimes wanting to restore it to its former ease. This spot, to which I returned with the greatest regret, and which before appeared so barren and dismal, all of a sudden resumed a new and smiling appearance. Having noticed, as I walked along, the traces of a flock of elephants, which must have passed there that very day, nothing more was needful to banish all my uneasiness, and to console me for the delay I had undergone in my journey ; we therefore pitched our tents in that very spot.

I had among my hottentots a man who had travelled this length in his youth with his horde and family, who had not been many years moved from it. As he had likewise a general knowledge of the country, I made choice of him, with four others ; and having put my camp in order, we set out all six, carrying with us some provisions ; and following the traces of the elephants, which we never lost sight of even for a moment : but they led us onwards till night without discovering any thing. We then sat down to supper very cheerfully, advising one another not to think too much of the pleasures of our camp ; and, having kindled a large fire, we stretched

stretched ourselves out around it, upon the hard cold ground.

While each of us had affected to stimulate his neighbours to courage and patience, we were equally tormented with fear and uneasiness: not one of us got a very sound sleep: on the smallest breath of wind, or the least shaking of a leaf, we got up to listen, and began to make ready for our own preservation. Night passed on amidst these gentle alarms; and at day-break I roused my sleepy companions by loud bawling: little time was needful to dress them; and a glass of strong liquor recruited their spirits, and made them forget the harsh method I had taken to awake them. We spent this second day in great dejection; and we were not so successful as we were the first. This evening we repeated the same ceremonies as before, with this difference only, that being perhaps somewhat bolder, and even more confident, we expected that an uninterrupted sleep would refresh us a little from our fatigue, and serve at least to recruit us. But a very sudden alarm disturbed us. Scarcely had my Hottentots been an hour asleep, when a buffalo, attracted by the light, came up close to us; but as this animal dreads man, no sooner did he notice us, than he was terrified, and instantly fled. The noise he made in retreating precipitately through the bushes, and the rattling of the branches, awaked us; upon which we all of us started up, and having searched around for an hour, firing our pieces by chance, we returned to our fire. The third day was still more unfortunate: the history of it I shall recount at greater length, as it frequently recurs to my mind; and at this moment, as the fire of youth cools, it does not carry me into such rash undertakings, and has given place to more sedate ideas: the recollection of it still affects me, and makes me tremble.

Still following the traces of the animals without ever losing view of them, we came to a very large open part of the forest, where there were only a few shrubs, and some short underwood. Having made a halt here, one of my Hottentots got up a tree to get a better prospect; and throwing his eyes every where around him, he made a signal to us to keep silence, by clapping his finger to his mouth; and signed with his hand, which he opened and shut

shut again several times, the number of elephants he observed. When he came down we held a council; and going to the leeward of them, that we might get near without being observed, he led me so near through the bushes, that we were quite close to these enormous animals. I almost touched them, I may say, and yet I did not see them; though I can safely aver that my eyes were not fascinated by fear. In such circumstances one must run great hazard, and be prepared for danger. I stood upon a little height just above the elephant. In vain did my bold Hottentot point it out with his finger; and twenty times repeat, in an anxious and impatient tone of voice, *there it is*. I saw nothing like it; for casting my eyes to a much greater distance, I never dreamed that what I saw below me could be any thing but a rock, since the mass I saw was wholly motionless. At length, however, a gentle movement drew my attention; and the head and tusks of the animal, which screened its enormous body, turned about towards me. Without losing this opportunity, or spending my time in fine contemplations, I leaned my large fusée on its pivot, and taking aim at the center of its forehead, discharged my piece, upon which it immediately dropped down dead; whilst about thirty more of them, startled by the report, fled on every side. Nothing could be more entertaining than to observe the motion of their huge ears, which flapped about in proportion to the swiftness with which they ran off: but this was only an introduction to a much more animated transaction.

I was looking round upon them with great satisfaction, when I fired my fusée at one of them as it passed close by us. By the excrements tinged with blood which fell from it, I supposed that it was dangerously wounded, and we began to follow it. One time it fell, then got up, then fell again; but we were close by its heels, and constantly made it get up by the shots which we discharged at it. At the fourteenth shot, it turned round with great fury upon the Hottentot who had fired at it; whilst another fired a fifteenth, which only tended to increase its rage; and as it advanced rapidly towards us, he exclaimed to us to be upon our guard. I was only about twenty-five paces distant from it; loaded with my
fusée,

fusée, which weighed thirty pounds, besides my ammunition: and I was in a more disadvantageous situation than my people; who, not having ventured so far, could more readily escape the avenging trunk, and extricate themselves from the danger. I therefore took to my heels: but the elephant, at every step, gained ground upon me; so that, more like one dead than alive, for only one of my people at that moment ran up to defend me, I had no other resource but to lie down close by the trunk of an old tree, which lay along on the ground. Scarcely had I got in to my lurking place, when the animal came up, leaped over the trunk of the tree, and, being much terrified with the noise of my people, whom he heard before him, he waited to listen. From the spot where I lay, I could have very easily fired, as my fusée very fortunately was loaded; but the animal had already got so many shots without effect, and then stood in so unfavourable a position, that, despairing to kill it by one shot, I lay motionless waiting my fate. I however watched it closely, resolving to sell my life at a very dear rate, should it attempt to come again towards me. My Hottentots, uneasy for their master, called to me from every side; but I was very careful to give them no answer. Convinced by my silence that they had lost their chief, they redoubled their cries, and were filled with the greatest despair. The elephant, terrified, immediately turned about, and a second time jumped over the very tree, six paces under the spot where I lay, without observing me; upon which getting up, I fired with impatience in my turn, and anxious to shew my Hottentots some signs of life, I discharged my fusée in his hinder parts. The elephant then totally disappeared; leaving every where as it went along indubitable marks of the cruel situation to which it was reduced.

But the picture is not yet finished; friendship and gratitude require the last touch. Noble Man! who possessing a feeling heart, the time is now arrived when I must raise to your memory that monument which I promised thee. Never can you comprehend with what pleasure I fulfil this duty: may it do some honour to my travels, nay, even ornament the relation of them. It will never reach your ears in the bosom of your peaceful deserts: but
sensible

sensible you were once of my tears, and your fraternal arms have pressed me to your bosom. Whether alive or among the dead, still do I feel it. My remembrance will be preserved longer and more nobly among thy savage hordes, than by empty trophies reared by the pride of man. I acknowledge myself unworthy of it, and I renounce it. But do thou, generous Klaas, young pupil of nature, whose virtuous mind was never tainted by our elegant institutions, retain always the remembrance of thy friend. It is to thee only that he still addresses his tears and his tender regret.

As I lay stretched out by the trunk of an old tree, at the mercy of a ferocious animal, which with its wandering eye was in search of me every where around; and which, had it turned towards me, might have killed me at once on the spot—it was at that moment my heart, throbbing with terror, was awake to the feelings of a tender sentiment, occasioned by one of that very race of people, of whom civilized nations never speak but with disgust or contempt; whom, ignorant of, they consider as atrocious beings, the mere refuse of nature; in a word, by the opprobrious terms of an *African savage*, a *Cassre*, a *Hotteniot*.

Upon my leaving the Cape, Mr Boers gave me this man, as one upon whose courage and fidelity I could have dependance. He had expressly ordered him never to quit me, whether living or dead; promising to reward him nobly, if, upon my returning to the Cape sound and safe, I should give a satisfactory testimony as to his behaviour. This was the man who never left me for a moment; and who, having observed me suddenly disappear, hurried to my assistance, though he searched for me in vain. I heard him calling on me through the bushes with a faint voice, which witnessed his anxiety; then address himself to my dispirited and confounded companions, who followed him at a little distance, and reproach them with their timidity, when in danger. “What will become of us?” said he, in his own expressive and affecting language—“what will become of us, if we have the misfortune to discover our unfortunate master trodden to death under the feet of the elephant? Dare you ever go back to the Cape without him? How will you ap-
“pear

“ fear before the fiscal? Whatever excuse you may make, “ you will be held as base assassins: it is you indeed who “ have destroyed him. Return to his camp; plunder and “ scatter his effects; do whatever you please. For my “ own part, I shall never leave this place: dead or alive “ I must discover my unfortunate master; I have deter- “ mined to perish along with him.”—These words he uttered with sighs and complaints so affecting, that even in the most critical moment, I found the tears start from my eyes, and the tenderest feelings succeed to terror. The firing my fusée was a signal of joy; and I found myself in a moment surrounded by my people, and in the arms of my dear Klaas, who pressed me so closely that I could scarcely disengage myself from him. This faithful youth kissed my clothes and person in turns; while his companions, with the greatest sorrow, and in a suppliant attitude, stretched out their hands to me, as if to intreat my pardon. I took care to comfort them; this scene was too highly gratifying to disturb it by useless words or reproaches. From that day, the most fortunate in my life, in which I knew the pleasure of being tenderly beloved, and from no interested motives, I considered the worthy Klaas as my equal, my brother, and the partner of all my pleasures, misfortunes, and secrets: he has oftener than once quieted my uneasy moments, and revived my drooping courage. If he after this shewed any signs of weakness which were dangerous, and contrary to the good order I had established among my people, this mark of his attachment gave him so much power over me, that I never could allow myself to be harsh towards him, or even to disquiet his mind.

The annexed drawing of this brave and faithful Hotentot, I took from nature; and the accurate and striking resemblance here given of him was done under my inspection, and engraved from my own drawing.

On the approach of night, we hastened towards the elephant which I had been so lucky as to kill with one shot: and indeed nothing could have been more seasonable; for our presence drove off some vultures, and several other small carnivorous animals, which, without losing time, had instantly begun to devour it. We kindled a great number of fires; and, as our provisions began to

run short, my people cut a few steaks off from the elephant, and prepared some slices for me of the trunk. This was the first time I had ever eaten such food; and I firmly determined it should not be the last, for I found it most delicious. Klaas assured me, that when I eat a little of the feet, I should soon forget the trunk; and, in order to convince me, he promised me a most delicious breakfast, which he instantly ordered to be got ready. The four feet of the animal were then cut off: a hole about three or four feet square was made in the ground, and filled with live coals; and the whole being covered over with dry wood, a large fire was kept up in it during the greater part of the night. When the hole was sufficiently warm, every thing was taken out of it. Klaas then put in it the four feet of the animal, covering them over with hot ashes; afterwards with coals, and some small bits of wood: and this fire was allowed to remain till day-light. All this night I only slept; for, agreeable to the orders given by Klaas, my people kept on watch. They told me that they had heard many buffaloes and elephants ranging around. This we looked for, as the whole forest was filled with them; but the number of our fires deterred them from coming to disturb us.

My people brought me at breakfast one of the elephant's feet; which was swelled so much by its being baked, that I could scarcely distinguish its shape. It however looked well, and had so sweet a flavour that I was anxious to taste it. I indeed found that it was food fit for a king. I had often heard bears feet boasted of; but I could not understand how an animal so heavy and coarse as the elephant could produce such tender and delicate flesh. "Never," reasoned I with myself—"never can our modern Luculli display upon their tables a dish equal to this which I now enjoy. In vain with their riches do they alter and reverse the seasons; in vain do they boast of laying all other nations under contribution: their luxury has never yet attained to this gratification; bounds are prescribed to their sensuality." And I eat up without any bread my elephant's foot; while my Hottentots, sitting near me, regaled themselves with other parts, which they considered as no less excellent. These particulars may seem childish,

ish, or at least of no moment, to a great many readers; but it is needful to mention every thing, since so many ridiculous and absurd notions have hitherto been indulged as to this singular country which I was now travelling through.

The remainder of the morning we employed in extracting its tusks; as it was a female, they did not weigh more than twenty pounds: the animal herself was eight feet three inches high. My people then loaded themselves with all the provisions they could carry, and we proceeded on our way back to the camp. We at first proposed to follow the one we had left alive, and which had been wounded so severely; but so many had arrived during the night, that their traces were entirely blended: we were, besides, so worn out, that being afraid lest I should discourage these poor people, I determined to lead them back as quickly as I could.

The Hottentots have the faculty of seeing in the most exquisite degree; and this advantage is aided by a very wonderful attention. Upon the hardest ground, where, notwithstanding its weight, the elephant leaves no traces perceptible to a common eye, amidst withered leaves scattered and driven up and down by the wind, the African can trace the prints of this animal's feet: he sees the path it has followed, and that which he must pursue to come up with it. A green leaf turned up or torn off, a bud destroyed, the manner in which a small branch is broken off, and a thousand trifling circumstances, are to him unquestionable marks, whilst the most expert European hunter would lose every trace. For my own part, I could discover nothing; though I had spent much time and attention upon this divining part of one of the most pleasant kinds of hunting. I acknowledge that I was so fond of it, that I did not disdain to enter into the minutiae of it. I got instruction more and more every day; and, when I ranged the woods with my people, I spent whole days in asking questions; and had sometimes opportunities of putting my precepts into immediate practice.

Upon our return to the camp, my old Swanepoel informed me that, during my absence, he had been disturbed every night by flocks of elephants, which had come

so near that they heard them break off the branches of the trees, and feed on the leaves. I made a journey through the forest; and I indeed saw a great many young trees broken, branches stripped of their leaves, and young shoots eaten away.

This was sufficient to tempt me again to take the field; especially as my people had gotten sufficient time to repose. I however rather inclined to go and surprise these animals in the day time, than to wait for them in my tent during the night. In the morning, therefore, I set out; but was forced to wander to a great distance. From the top of a height, at the edge of the wood, I perceived four in some very thick bushes: and being careful to get to the leeward of them, I approached them with great precaution; surveying them with much satisfaction for half an hour, while they were eating the tops of the branches. Before they caught them in their mouths, they beat them three or four times with their trunks; in order, as I suppose, to shake off the ants and other insects. After this process, they always grasped with their trunks all the branches they could entwine; and, conducting them to their mouths always on the left side, swallowed them without much chewing. I observed that they preferred those branches which were best supplied with leaves; and that they were, besides, excessively fond of a yellow fruit, when it was ripe, which in this country they call a cherry.

Having sufficiently examined their mode of feeding, I fired at the head of the one next me, which I killed; and in less than ten minutes I in the same manner extended the whole three on the ground*.

We supposed that there were no more: but a great noise near us having caused us turn about, one of my Hottentots, who discovered a small elephant, killed it. I was very much vexed with his rashness, and reprimanded him severely. As this animal was not bigger than a calf of five or six months old, I might very easily have tamed it.

One

* When the elephants are in flocks and pursued, if the first that is fired at falls, one may be sure of killing all the rest, one after the other. I shall say something of this singularity hereafter.

One of the four I had killed, was a young male seven feet one inch high. The tusks weighed only about fifteen pounds each.

The largest of the others, which were all females, was only eight feet five inches; and their tusks, did not generally exceed fifteen pounds each.

A singular circumstance which astonished both me and my Hottentots, who protested to me they had never before seen it—and which naturalists, according to their laudable custom of admitting as certain and invariable principles only what they find related in books, and by those who travel in their closets, will probably doubt—is, that the female, which we conjectured to be the mother of the young male, had only one teat, placed in the middle of her breast. It was full of milk, some of which I pressed out into my hand, and found it remarkably sweet; but the taste of it was very far from agreeable: this milk proceeded from eight small orifices, very perceptible and distinct. The rest had two dugs, situated generally under the breast, of the same shape as those of women; and of such a size, that more than one lady of pleasure who has lost a little of her plumpness, might have envied this charm in the female elephants.

The young male elephant which my hasty Hottentot killed, had no tusks: and when I opened its lips a little, at the place from which they should have grown I observed only a small white knob, of the size of a swan shot: the flesh was extremely delicate. In one of the females I expected to discover a fetus, but was mistaken. I found their stomachs stuffed with a very limpid liquor, some of which my people drank, and which I also had the curiosity to put to my mouth; but it was so disagreeable and nauseous, that to overcome the taste of it, and to refresh myself, I went and drank from a spring which happened to be at the distance of a quarter of a league from the place where we were at the time.

Leaving my people busily employed in cutting up the elephants, when I returned from the spring, about half an hour after, I was much surprised to see no body. I could not understand what had obliged them to leave their work; nor could I divine the cause of this sudden desertion. Beginning to roar out as loudly as I could,

in order to bring them back, provided they should be near enough to hear me, I was much surprised on seeing them all four jump out of the elephant's belly, into which they had entered to detach the interior fibres: these, beside the feet and the trunk, are the most delicate pieces.

I sent off my fifth Hottentot to desire Swanepoel to send me a yoke of oxen and a chain. As we had cut off the four heads when they arrived, we began by putting the chain through them; but it needed no little art and address to make the oxen come near, and to yoke them to the chain. They snorted most violently, turned away their nostrils, and started back with horror. By stratagem, however, we were able to bring them back; and they were fastened to the four heads, which they dragged to my tent, across sands, dust, and bushes sprinkled with their blood: a horrid sight no doubt, but still a necessary one; as the roads were so bad that a waggon could never have been carried to the place. But the case was still worse, when, being anxious to return to the elephants, near which I had left a part of my people, I could not get my horse to pass those places which were stained with their blood. I was forced to take another road; and when we approached the elephants, as soon as he saw and felt the smell of them, he capered and kicked so violently, that he threw me off; and making of full gallop, by a very long circuit returned to the camp in a hurry.

I am now again about to mention one of those moments which do not occur twice in life. With what feelings is my soul agitated! I shall hate pleasure, and all its inventions. One must be a different being to combine so many ideas and various opinions. He who now feels them cannot support them; he is agitated, oppressed, and overcome by them. As I was obliged to return on foot, I observed through the trees a strange Hottentot riding on horse-back, taking the shortest road to come up with me. Having stopped to wait for him, I found that he was a messenger sent express by Mr Bours. He had been ordered to enquire concerning me in every part of the colonies through which I might have passed; and to follow the traces he found of me, when, leaving the known roads, I should enter the more distant country. This man had executed his commission faith-

at

fully; and, directed by the ruts of my wheels, had been at all my different encampments, till he found me in my present one.

Previous to my leaving the Cape, Mr Boers had promised that if he got any letters for me from Europe, while I was absent, whatever road I might take, or wherever I might be, he would be careful to send them to me. This respectable friend was as good as his word; and in the packet which his Hottentot gave me, I found several which had the French stamp. As these were the first accounts I had got from Europe since I left it, it would not be easy to describe with what impatience and agitation I took them from the messenger. Ignorant of what was to be learned from them, I had scarcely strength sufficient to open them; and it may be easily conjectured that I did not wait till my return to the camp, to satisfy myself on this subject. They were all from my dearest friends, and my wife; my eyes ran over them more quickly than lightning; but I every where found reason to be happy; for I observed that I was beloved and regretted. The tenderest friendship came to seek me in the midst of my deserts, and to overwhelm my heart with its delights. I neither could speak, sigh, nor weep—I could only continue in the spot where I was, ready to die with joy; but I recovered my senses by degrees, and returned to my camp.

These first transports having subsided, I shut myself up in my tent; and giving free vent to my tears, which gave me some relief, I immediately proceeded to write answers to these letters: I dated mine from *the camp of Auteniqua, the day on which I had killed four elephants*. One of these letters, in which were some interesting narrations, addressed to a literary friend, was handed about ridiculously some years ago through Paris: and was afterwards lost. I mentioned there several discoveries which oppose opinions hitherto received; and of which I shall give an account in my description of animals.

When my camp was put in order at night, and all the fires kindled, I set myself, as usual, with my papers before me upon a piece of plank, while my Hottentots sat round about me.—“My friends,” said I, “you see one
“of your countrymen, whom Mr Boers has sent to en-
“your

“quire in what situation I am; and to know whether
 “your behaviour be agreeable to what he expects from
 “you, and to your duty towards me. Observe, added
 “I, shewing them the first letter on which I put my
 “hand——observe the answer which I have written;
 “and in which I tell him that you have hitherto behaved
 “like honest and brave fellows; and that, during the
 “eight months we have been travelling in company, I
 “have considered you as the faithful companions of my
 “undertaking and labours. I tell him that he needs not
 “be anxious on my account, as I have the same confi-
 “dence in you as in myself; and that Mr Boers’s mes-
 “senger, when he returns to the Cape, may be able to
 “assure your friends and families that you are all well,
 “and that you are contented and happy, I wish him to
 “be a witness himself of the friendly manner in which I
 “treat you; and for this reason I shall give each of you
 “an excellent roll of tobacco: I hope, therefore, that all
 “your pipes will be lighted immediatly.”—When I had
 distributed the tobacco, every man retired to his place,
 and smoked away at his ease.

I was so overcome with the testimonies of affection
 which I got from my relations and friends, with there
 sincere protestations of regard, and with the accurate in-
 formation which they all gave me in their communications
 that, intoxicated with pleasure, and forgetting Africa, my
 hunting excursions, my most beautiful birds, and my e-
 legant collections, and in a word for that instant becom-
 ing a child, I planned in order to amuse me what certain
 ranks of men would call a *festival*, and those of an infe-
 rior rank a *farce*.

I had distributed my tobacco too freely; and my peo-
 ple had gotten more than was enough to intoxicate them,
 had I suffered them to use it as they pleased: but I
 thought of a method to hinder them. Remarking that
 the third pipe was drawing to an end, the moment I had
 drank my tea I desired a small box to be brought to me,
 which I set upon my knees. I opened it, and never did
 any empiric shew more mysterious cunning; I took from
 it that noble and harmonious instrument unknown prob-
 ably at Paris, but very common in some of the provin-
 ces, and which is to be seen in the hands of almost every

Scarcely

school-boy and of the vulgar—in one word, a Jew's harp. Scarcely had I begun one of those airs which are played on the Pont Neuf, when I saw all around me with the utmost silence laying down their pipes, and staring at me with their mouths wide open, their arms half extended, and their fingers spread, in the attitude of those people whom some old women has bewitched. With their ears open, and their heads motionless, and reclining to one side, unwilling to lose the least note of the instrument; till, no longer able to restrain their enthusiasm, each insensibly left his place, to enjoy the pleasure nearer. I expected every moment to see them altogether prostrate themselves before the god who performed this wonder; whilst I could scarcely keep from getting out into a fit of laughter, which soon would have done away the whole charm. When I had finished, I laid hold of the person who was next me, and put the wonderful instrument into his hands: I found it very hard to make him understand the method of using it; but having at length done it some how or other, I sent him back again to his place. As I much questioned whether the rest would be pleased if they had not one each, I distributed as many Jews' harps as there were Hottentots; and being all gathered together, some performing pretty well, others badly, and some wretchedly, they regaled me with a concert which might have frightened the very Furies. Even my very oxen, disturbed by their horrid bunning, began to bellow out; and suddenly my camp became such a scene of noise and riot as was perhaps never seen. In every part of it the true picture of a holiday was seen.

By their stupid air when I myself tried the foolish instrument, I was convinced that simple minds may be struck with astonishment by equally simple means; and notwithstanding all which history mentions of the great talents of Orpheus, and of the miracles performed by his music, I am always ready to allow much honour to those poets who have celebrated this melodious lyre, which their imagination only has consecrated.

Being sufficiently satisfied with the melody of mine, and apprehensive that these pleasantries might be turned into very serious alarms; and that my oxen, which had not yet entirely forgotten the elephants heads might ab-
my

olutely be frightened, and run off; I gave a signal with my hand that I had something more to mention, and immediately the noise ceased. "My dear friends," said I in a simple and endearing tone, "I have refreshed you, "with the best tobacco you ever tasted; I have made you "acquainted with an astonishing instrument: we are now going to conclude this delightful entertainment with a few bumpers of the best French brandy; and we shall drink the health of our friends and families."

This, as I have mentioned, was really a holiday; and, even to the domestic animals, every one must share in the general frolic, and act a part in our orgies. Kees was at this moment close at my side; a place which he was remarkably fond of, and which he never failed to assume every evening. Educated like a child of the family, I had almost spoiled him; for I never eat or drank a morsel without giving him part of it. If I happened to forget him at a time, as he was a determined enemy to my absence of thought, he took great pains to awaken me from my reveries by patting my hand, or smacking his lips. I have already mentioned that he was extraordinary gluttonous; his temperament led him to extremes: for he was as fond of milk, as of strong liquors. I never gave him any of the latter but upon a plate, which I commonly ordered to be placed before him; as I remarked that every time he had drank it from a glass, his hurry made him take as much by the nose as by the mouth, so that he coughed and sneezed for hours after, which incommoded him very much, and might have at length occasioned his breaking some blood vessel.

At this time he was on the ground close beside me, waiting till his allowance should be served up to him; and following with his eyes the bottle as it passed round, and which stopped at each of my Hottentots. How impatiently did he wait for his turn! How forcibly did he express by his motions and looks that he dreaded the brandy bottle would be emptied too soon, and would not come his length! But, alas! the unlucky animal, while licking his lips by anticipation, little thought that he was about to taste it for the last time. But be not afraid, tender hearted reader! My worthy Kees did not perish, and my spirits were saved in future.

I had

I had just finished my dispatches, and inclosed them in their outer cover, when he saw with satisfaction that the bottle had gone round, it came into my head to disappoint him by a trick, without any other intention than to surprise him, and to entertain myself. His modicum had been just poured into the plate; and, whilst he was about to taste it, I lighted at my candle a slip of paper, which conveyed unobserved under his belly: the brandy immediately took fire; Kees gave a shrill cry, and leaped to the distance of ten paces from me. I endeavoured to recal him, by offering him a thousand caresses; but, following the dictates of his own passion and anger, he instantly disappeared, and went to rest. Night being now pretty far spent, I had the compliments and thanks of my people; and we all had a very sound sleep.

I must observe that, after this terrible fright into which poor Kees was thrown, all the means I could use to make the animal forget what had passed, and to bring him back to his favourite liquor, were quite fruitless. He never would taste a drop of it; on the contrary, he appeared to have conceived an implacable aversion to it. When any of my people, for their diversion only, presented the bottle to him, he muttered between his teeth: and sometimes when within his reach he would give it a blow; and, immediately climbing a tree, there shew his displeasure in perfect security.

After having properly rewarded Mr Boer's intelligent commissioner, next day, I delivered my dispatches to him, and ordered him to set out on his return.

I began in the morning to dissect the head of one of the elephants, in which I left the grinders and the tusks. In the mean time, several of my people, who had gone to procure provisions, brought back plenty of flesh, being some of the most succulent parts of the four elephants, which they cut into very long and thin slices, in order that, being exposed to the sun according to our usual custom, they might dry sooner. Some broke the bones into small pieces, and put them in our two kettles; after which they threw boiling water upon them: in proportion as the grease melted, it floated on the surface; and being collected, it was put into bladders, and, the better to preserve it, some of the intestines. A Hottentot never omits

omits to make this provision; for, besides what he daily uses at his toilette, he employs it also in cooking different dishes. As for us, we never could find too much of it, as we were forced to grease the wheels and traces of our waggons; which, without this precaution, would have soon been so much dried by the sun as to be unfit for use. I used it myself for candles and for my night lamp, which consumed a great quantity: for want of spun cotton I made wicks of my neckcloths.

To prepare this fat took up a considerable part our time; and the operation was not quite finished, when some of my people came to tell me that they had observed, at about a hundred paces from my tent, an enormous print of an elephant's foot. As the traces were quite fresh, I concluded this monstrous animal could not be at a great distance; and immediately went in search of it. We ranged the forest with great care; and having come up with it after half an hour, I took aim at it in the proper place: but I was much surprised that it did not fall: my fusée, in all probability, had not been sufficiently loaded, or the animal was an impenetrable rock. When it found itself wounded, however, it rushed towards us with great fury, as we were expecting; but the bushes being thick, and serving as a kind of rampart to us, it could do nothing else than stamp the earth, and shew its rage in vain. It lost a great deal of blood; but it appeared, from the swiftness with which it fled, that it would not avail any thing to pursue it. I was extremely sorry for this disappointment, as it was the largest I had ever before seen. It was at least thirteen feet high; and, to judge by the eye, the weight of its tusks could not have been less than an hundred and twenty pounds each.

Our provisions being thoroughly packed and dried up, we departed, in order to return once more towards the fatal Kayman's Hole, where I had passed on the 30th of April, two months before. My Hottentots, whom I had sent to reconnoitre, having informed me that we could cross the chain of mountains at one called the *Devil's Head*, we pursued our course that way, and this afforded me an opportunity of again visiting the place of my encampment at Pampoen-Kraal, upon which I once
more

more cast a look of regret.—On our arrival at the bottom of the mountain, I ordered the elephant's head I had dissected, its tusks, and all my preserved birds and insects, to be put upon one of the carriages; and again leaving my camp to the care of my faithful servants, repaired with my waggon to the house of Mr Mulder; for, as I was obliged to return in order to find a passage, I had approached very near to his habitation. Having engaged to transmit my packet and fresh letters to Mr Boers by the first opportunity, I at length took leave of this respectable family, whom I was never again to see, and went back to my camp.

Very early next morning, we ascended the mountain; though not without much difficulty and fatigue. But this was nothing in comparison of what we experienced in descending on the other side: the sight of it indeed terrified me. As soon as we observed it, we all looked at one another without uttering a single syllable, as people suddenly caught in a snare: we could not however continue on the top; and it was necessary that we should descend either on the one side or the other. If we escaped from Charybdis, we were still exposed to the danger of falling into Scylla. Always persuaded that patience and precaution will overcome the greatest obstacles, I could not think that this enterprise would be more difficult for my caravan, than the passage of the Alps had formerly been to great armies; and I instantly prepared, as one may say, for taking this dangerous leap. I was careful to make my carriages descend one after the other; and that they should be each drawn by no more than two oxen. I caused the first to advance in good order, attended by all my people: but we were forced to pass over pointed rocks, detached one from the other; which, forming so many high steps, gave the waggon such jolts, as almost broke it to pieces. This however was not what seemed to us to be most dangerous; for, by the help of ropes affixed to the wheels, we raised them up, or suffered them to roll, as occasion required: it was the plain places, and the slippery declivities, that made us shudder. At every moment I thought I saw the carriage and the oxen hurried to the brink of the precipice; while, on the

side opposite to the declivities, we pulled with all our might the ropes fastened to the waggon. Our address being crowned with complete success, we ascended to bring down the other two carriages; and, after a considerable time, the whole caravan got safe to the foot of the mountain. To me it appeared that Nature had opposed this barrier, as an obstacle to prevent me from entering on this new country; and that it was here she had concealed her most beautiful treasures: on this account I had been so much the more incited to overcome every thing that was in my way. I knew that this route from Auteniqua to the Ange-Kloof was looked upon by the natives as impracticable; and that no person before me had ever attempted it with carriages. Nothing more was necessary to pique my vanity; and I was fortunate enough to pass these rocks: but, as if it had been necessary that punishment should instantly follow such a rash attempt, I found myself in a most dreadful and gloomy desert.

This was no longer the beautiful and fertile country of Auteniqua: the mountain which we had crossed, or rather from which we had precipitated ourselves, formed a wall of separation between us and it for ever. No longer did it present those majestic forests which we had so long admired; for the whole back part of the chain was hideous and barren, destitute of trees, and without the smallest appearance of verdure. Another chain, parallel to this, seemed involuntarily to bear some paltry woods, which had some resemblance to that called *Wage-Boom*. This wood, by inclosing the country, and leaving only one fissure, has made the name of *Ange-Kloof* be given to this long valley.

It being my intention to direct my course northwards, I continued my journey for seven hours, keeping along that cursed valley; and we again crossed the *Queur-Boom*, which is but a moderate stream here; whereas two months preceding it had made me tremble, when, to search for my bald buzzard, I threw myself into it at its mouth too precipitately, and narrowly escaped being drowned. Pursuing our melancholy route, after several encampments no less tedious, and a march of twenty-two hours,

hours, I crossed another river, very justly named *Krom-Rivier*, or the Crooked River. It formed such a number of turns and windings, that we constantly found it in our way: I crossed it ten times. In proportion as we proceeded, the two chains of mountains seemed to approach each other on purpose, and the country to become considerably narrower. The valley was now only a marshy hollow; which, for full six leagues, occasioned great fatigue to my oxen. Once more we had a sight of the *Krom-Rivier*; but this was for the last time: it took its course towards the east, where it throws itself into the sea; and we at length turned altogether towards the north. Here I left one of my horses that was sick, and which could not follow us; as I was not willing to wait in hope of a cure, which probably might not succeed. I thought it would be much better to leave him to the care of nature for his preservation.

There are a few wretched houses along the *Ange-Kloof*, which resemble the dens of wild beasts more than the habitations of men. The inhabitants breed very few cattle. When the east wind blows across this wild country, it is extremely cold: I was sensible of it from the very first to the last day. We had ice and white frosts every morning. I do not exactly know the length of this dismal valley; but I am certain that it took forty-six hours to go through it.

Having advanced seven or eight leagues, I crossed *Diep-Rivier*, the Deep River; and ten leagues farther, we encamped upon the borders of that of *Gamtoos* on the 7th of August. It takes its name from an unlucky captain who in a storm was shipwrecked near its mouth.

About half an hour before our arrival here, we were forced to descend another very steep and dangerous mountain, by which the bellies of two of my oxen burst, so that their bowels came out. This loss was occasioned by the person who conducted my second waggon, and who had imprudently quitted it.

The delightful appearance of this new country made us ample amends for the melancholy moments we had several days experienced, amidst the detestable roads and the ice of the valley of the *Ange-Kloof*.

Towards the middle of the first night, I encamped, but before I had fallen asleep in my tent, I thought I heard an unusual noise: and listening with attention, found that I was not deceived; for I could distinguish the sound of singing and shouting, which seemed to proceed from no great distance. I instantly called my people, who told me that they also heard a confused noise; but we knew not whether it was Hottentots or Caffres that occasioned it. I had great reason to be afraid of the latter; not that they thirst more after human blood, as ignorant writers have said; but because the cruel manner in which they are treated by the planters, incites them more to war, and because the right of avenging injuries is natural to man. I shall soon relate several facts, which will prove, better than vain reasonings, whether an European or a savage is the most barbarous.

As it was very probable that I would be confounded among the victims of their vengeance, I ordered all my people to be under arms, and we removed to some distance from our camp. The farther we marched, the sound became more distinct; and we perceived some fires. I could not however persuade myself that they were Caffres; for they would have betrayed themselves: cunning in vain borrows the darkness of night, it must also borrow its silence.

After having placed myself in ambush, that I might be able to surprise them, in case they should pass that way to plunder my camp, I dispatched two of my people to take a nearer view of them; who instantly returned to inform me that we had been alarmed without any cause; and that they were only a horde of Hottentots, who were singing and making merry. This information delivered me from my uneasiness, and I was even happy in my adventure, which appeared to promise a very interesting interview next morning. We therefore returned to our camp, and slept very soundly.

I was again awakened early in the morning by a singing, which afforded me no small pleasure. It proceeded from birds which I did not know, and which I had never before heard. I found them most beautiful. I was dazzled by the brilliant and variable plumage of the copper-coloured starling, the amethyst-coloured throat of the certhia

*certhia flaveola**, the couroucoucout†, the king's hunter, and of a great many others: I likewise perceived several species which I had never seen before.

Game seemed to me to be very plenty in this place. Above all, I saw numberless flocks of pheasants, and a few of those antelopes named bosbock, pass before me. The facility I found in getting all these animals, of which I had never seen so great abundance any where, filled me with the utmost joy.

Whilst amusing myself with firing at the birds, I gave my Hottentots liberty to go and pay a visit to their countrymen. A short time made up an acquaintance with this savage horde; I myself in my turn went up to them, and we were soon both satisfied with one another. Every evening a large quantity of milk was brought to us by their women; for these people were very rich in cattle. They made me a present of a few sheep, to which they added an excellent pair of oxen for my carriages; and being unwilling to remain their debtor, I gave them in return some earthen ware, a small quantity of tobacco, and a few knives. All my people insinuated themselves insensibly into the kraal; each then had his doxy, and the female squadron came and established themselves among us while we remained in this place.

I was informed that at the mouth of this river some hippopotami, or river horses, might be met with, none of which I had ever seen. Being only five or six miles distant from the sea, and on that account had it in my power, perhaps, to get acquainted for the first time with this species of quadruped, I set out with the utmost speed. The river however was so broad, and its banks were so encumbered with large trees, that my labour and researches were fruitless. I spent whole days in walking along its shores; and in the night time I placed myself on the watch, hoping to see some of them come forth from the water to feed; but I never had even that much satisfaction.

* In the original *fucrier*; called also by Brisson *grimberau*; and by Sir Hans Sloan, in his Natural History of Jamaica, *the black and yellow bird*.

† *Carucui*, a Brazilian bird. *Trogon. Lin. T.*

To make me amends, elephants and buffaloes, especially the latter, were so common, and easy to be killed, that we got more provisions than we could make use of. I supplied the former husbands of our women with great abundance: being better armed than they, I hunted solely for them; so that I obliged them in every possible manner. Thus, amidst the deserts of Africa, I introduced the customs and polite manners of the most polished nations of Europe. I must here observe, that if some historians have said that the Hottentots are of a jealous disposition, those whom we met with were not susceptible of that cruel passion. Had I afterwards met with any hordes subject to it, I should have mentioned this circumstance with the same veracity.

My engaging behaviour had secured me the friendship and confidence of these honest savages; and they entertained so high an idea of me, that they never undertook any thing without consulting me. Having one day come to complain that the hyænas of the country ravaged and destroyed their flocks, I was more inclined to credit what they said, as one of my oxen had just been devoured by the same animals. Delighted with having an opportunity of hunting these ferocious beasts along with them, I appointed next day for our excursion; and they arrived at my camp early in the morning, to the number of about an hundred men, all well armed with bows and arrows. To these I added all my hunters; and, putting myself at their head, we beat the whole country round with our dogs. With such a number of people I expected to make a general slaughter among these destructive animals; but three shots which we fired, and which killed three of them, had apparently dispersed all the rest. After this we saw none of them; for the noise had so terrified them, that, from that moment till the time of our departure, we heard no more of the hyænas than if they had never existed.

We had an alarm some days after, which might have become serious. In the middle of the night we were all in an instant awakened by a dreadful noise, proceeding from a troop of elephants, which in passing us almost brushed against our camp: they might be about an hundred in number. On this occasion I was filled with such
terrible

terrible apprehensions, which my people shared along with me, that we did not think proper to attack this formidable battalion, nor to dispute their passage. Had we made an attempt, my camp, my animals, my carriages, and all my people, would in an instant have been crushed to atoms. They however did not stop, and my camp remained in perfect safety.

By break of day we had a visit from our neighbours, who had been exposed to the same terrors. They came with no other intention than to inform us that, if we should ever again meet with the same species, we ought to be very cautious in not firing at them; as the elephants we had seen were extremely dangerous, and much more mischievous than the rest. They assured me that their flesh was good for nothing; that it occasioned ulcers to those who eat it; and, in a word, that they were red elephants.—Red elephants! this word alone inspired me with a strong desire to see them, and appeared to promise the acquirement of fresh knowledge; for I had never read or heard that there were red elephants.

When these animals retired into the woods, they had got to a deep hollow, surrounded by enormous bushes, where it would have been very imprudent to approach too near them. I therefore ordered some Hottentots to file off behind, and to form a ring; desiring them to set fire, at certain distances, to the dry grass; and to discharge some shots, to make them pass by the foot of a large rock, upon which I had stationed myself with my best marksmen, and where we could be exposed to no kind of danger.

My rangers seconded my efforts in a surprising manner; for no sooner had the fires and the noise of the reports spread the alarm, than the whole troop, frightened, presented themselves before me. Twelve shots, which they did not expect, made them retreat with great precipitation, and in much disorder. I should in vain attempt to describe the numberless signs which they exhibited of their fury: on one side they saw themselves pursued by the flames of the bushes, which gained on them behind; and on the other by my shots, which I directed to the only passage that remained for them to escape death. They agitated their bodies as much as the largeness

largeness and heaviness of them would allow; while their deafening cries, and the crashing of the trees which they broke in retreating or flying, formed such a terrible tumult, that the sight of it frightened me, though I was sheltered by my rock, and could not be disturbed in any manner. We wounded one, which for a little separated from the troop; but it soon joined them; and being confounded with the rest, it would have been very difficult to take aim at it again. From the nature of its bellowing, I imagined it had received a mortal wound, and that it could not long survive; but we did not think proper to go immediately in search of it, being fully persuaded that it could not escape us.

I had no other view in this new kind of hunting than to procure one of these animals; which were said to be of a different species from all those I had before seen. Satisfied with having wounded one, and considering it as certainly dead, I resolved not to go in quest of it till the next morning; I consequently recalled all my people, and we returned to our camp. I had indeed been struck with the reddish colour of these animals; and I found this phenomenon extraordinary: but having noticed that the ground upon which we then were had almost the same tint; and reflecting that elephants are fond of wallowing in moist and marshy places, and even spend a part of their time in this manner, I began to doubt whether this colour could be owing to any other cause, and whether it was not merely fastitious.

Next morning, however, I was better convinced, when, on returning to the wood with my people, I found the elephant dead. Every body was persuaded that our neighbours were deceived; and though they had mentioned that it was dangerous to eat of this species, they cut off the trunk for me, and reserved for themselves the other parts of the animal. I afterwards met several planters, who likewise believed that there were red elephants; and so much were they prejudiced in favour of their own opinion, that all the pains I took to convince them of their error was to no purpose.

The one I killed, which was a female, was nine feet three inches high: one of its tusks weighed thirteen pounds, and the other ten. The left tusk of the elephant,

phant, whether male or female, is always shorter and slenderer than the right; it is also more smooth and shining. To account for this difference it must be noticed, as I have already said, that it is always from left to right that the animal conveys its food with its trunk to its mouth. The brambles or branches on which it feeds occasion a continual friction against that tusk, whilst, on the contrary, the right is hardly ever touched: besides, it is with the same tusk that it is accustomed to found the earth; and by the size of the holes which it makes, one may judge of its bulk.

When describing the elephant, I shall take notice of its manners, passions, and tastes; and on this subject nothing shall be advanced but what I have seen.

I began to take much pleasure in this kind of hunting, which I found much less dangerous than amusing. I could not then conceive, nor have I since been able to comprehend, why authors and travellers have filled the relations which they have written of the strength and sagacity of these animals with so many falsehoods; and given scope to their imaginations respecting the dangers to which those who pursue them are exposed. It must indeed be allowed that, if any are so thoughtless and foolhardy as to attack an elephant on plain open ground, they are sure of being destroyed if they miss their aim; but if they know how to take their advantages, all the strength of the animal must yield to their coolness and address. I own that the appearance of an elephant causes an astonishment which at first renders one almost stupid; it is awful and terrible: but, with a little courage and composure, one soon becomes accustomed to its aspect. Before he attempts this grand kind of hunting, a prudent man should endeavour to examine the character, the gait, and the resources of the animal; and he ought, above all, according to circumstances, to secure some places of retreat, to shelter him from danger, in case he should be pursued after having missed. By means of these precautions, this species of hunting is merely an amusing exercise; a game in which there is fifty to one to be laid in favour of the player.

During my stay in this canton I varied my encampments as well as my occupations; but I always was
much

much attached to the delightful banks of the Gmatooos. I here got an ample harvest of rarities, and my collection now increased very evidently.

We set off on the 11th of September, at six in the morning. And having signified my intention to the neighbouring horde, it was with the greatest regret that they saw us take our leave. For my own part, I could not leave them without being sensibly affected. I had become very much attached to these good people. "Can such mildness and simplicity," said I, "excite so great contempt? Are these then the savage inhabitants of Africa, who thirst after European blood, and who cannot be approached without horror?" This goodness and affability inspired me with the greater confidence, as I was then in fact in the midst of a desert, and as nothing seemed to threaten me with danger in time coming. All this country, which hordes of the Gonaquas only inhabit, differs materially from that belonging to the Hottentots of the colony. These people have no immediate intercourse one with another: the former are called *savage Hottentots*. Before I proceed I shall make a few observations, without which it is impossible to form very perfect ideas about them.

They now no longer form, as they once did, one nation, the same in manners, customs, and pursuits. The establishment of the Dutch colony was a fatal æra, which disunited them all, and produced those differences by which they are at present known.

In the year 1652, when Riebeck the surgeon, returned from India, and opened the eyes of the Directors of the Company as to the importance of a settlement at the Cape, they wisely thought that such an enterprise could not be better done than by the genius which had planned it. Having therefore ample powers, and provided with provisions, and every thing that could operate towards the success of his scheme, Riebeck soon arrived at Table Bay. Like an able politician, and a skilful negociator, he took every method he could to secure the friendship of the Hottentots; and he covered with honey the edge of the poisoned bowl. Seduced by powerful allurements, these savages, the unlimited masters of all this part of Africa, did not observe how many of
their

their privileges, and what authority, repose, and happiness, this guilty profanation deprived them of. Naturally indolent, true citizens of the world, and little conversant with agriculture, they were by no means uneasy that strangers should seize on a small corner of useless land, which was often uninhabited. They supposed that whether a little farther, or a little nearer, it was of no importance where their flocks, the only riches they thought worthy of their attention, sought for their food, provided they found it. The avaricious policy of the Dutch had a prospect of great hopes from so peaceful a beginning; and as it is readier, and knows better than any one else to embrace the advantages offered it by fortune, it did not fail to finish the work, by holding out two very seducing allurements to the Hottentots—tobacco and strong spirits. From that instant these unhappy savages bid adieu to liberty, and to that pride which is the consequence of a sense of those rights which mankind inherit from nature. Allured by these two baits, they came as near as they could to the source from which they got them; whilst the Dutch, who for a single pipe of tobacco, or a glass of brandy, could get an ox, paid every attention they could to so valuable neighbours. The colony increasing insensibly, and gaining more strength, that formidable power which gave law to all this part of Africa, and removed to a great distance every thing which attempted to oppose its eager ambition, was seen to rise on foundations which could not longer be shaken. The fame of its prosperity was soon spread, and attracted daily a number of new settlers. It may be easily conceived that, according to the usual custom, founded upon that reasoning, which destroys the laws of property, so sacred and so respectable, the will of the stronger party was a sufficient title for it to extend its possessions. The Dutch took possession indiscriminately at different times, and even without needing them, of all the lands which government, or individuals befriended by government, thought proper or found convenient for them.

The native Hottentots, thus hemmed in, pressed, and harassed on every side, divided themselves, and prosecuted plans entirely opposite. Those who were still concerned in the preservation of their flocks, penetrated even

to

to the mountains towards the north and north-east : but these were the smaller number. The rest, ruined by a few glasses of brandy, and a few pieces of tobacco, impoverished and stripped of every thing, did not think of leaving their country ; but totally renouncing their manners, as well as their ancient and fortunate condition, of which they have no recollection at this day, they basely sold their services to the whites, who having suddenly become haughty masters of submissive strangers, and enterprising planters, have not hands enough to turn to advantage their inconceivable riches ; and who relieve themselves of the painful and multiplied labours necessary on their plantations, by laying them upon these unhappy Hottentots, more and more degenerated and debased.

Some small and miserable hordes have indeed been established, and live as they are able, in different cantons of the colony ; but they have not even the power to chuse their own chief. As they are in the district of government, and subject to its authority, the right of naming him belongs entirely to the governor. The person whom he elects repairs to the town, and receives a large cane, similar to that of our courriers ; but with this difference, that the knob of it is of pure-copper : after which a crescent or gorget, made of the same metal, upon which is engraven in large letters the word *capitein*, is put round his neck as a badge of his dignity. From that time his melancholy horde, which for a long time perhaps has lost its national name, assumes that of the new chief who has been set over. They will then say, for instance, the horde of Captain Kees, who becomes a new creature to the governor, a new spy, and a new slave, while to his own countrymen he becomes a new tyrant.

The governor is never personally acquainted himself with those whom he appoints. It is commonly the planter nearest the horde who asks and determines the appointment for a creature of his own ; because he trusts that a low person whom he has in this manner patronized will not be ungrateful to him, and that he will have all his vassals ready to serve him when necessity requires. Thus without any preliminary information, and even without

thout any eye to justice, a helpless and feeble horde are ordained to receive laws from a man often incapable of commanding them; and thus does the interest of a single individual prevail against the general good both in important and trivial affairs: and it is thus that the revolutions of a republic, and the childish election of the cyndic of a village, conducted upon the same principle, are in their effects perfectly the same.

Such generally are the Hottentots distinguished by the name of the Hottentots of the Cape, or Hottentots of the colonies: but we must not mistake for them the savage Hottentots, who by way of derision are called the *Jackal-Hottentots*; and who, far distant from the arbitrary Dutch government, still retain in their desert where they live all the purity of their primitive customs.

Having now reached that point in my journey, where having no farther intercourse with the former, whom I had left behind me, I found myself in the very middle of the latter; but it is unnecessary that I should here enter particularly into all the various marks by which they are distinguished. To give some idea of the character of the savage Hottentots, and of what I had to expect from them, it will only be sufficient to make one remark, which is a truth confirmed by experience. In every country wherever the savages are totally separated from civilized nations, and live sequestered, their manners are mild; but they alter and become corrupted the nearer they approach them. When the Hottentots live amongst them, it is very seldom that they do not turn monsters. This assertion, however mortifying it may be, is notwithstanding a true principle, which is scarcely liable to a single exception. When to the northward of the Cape I found myself under the tropic, amongst remote nations; when I saw whole hordes surround me with evident emotions of surprise, and of the most puerile curiosity, and, approaching me with confidence, stroke my beard, my hair, and my face with their hands—"There is nothing to fear from these people, said I to myself; this is the first time they ever saw a white man."

I have more readily entered into this digression, as it is of some importance to fix the reader's attention to this part, the most interesting of all my excursions and travels.

vels. I anxiously return to it; and I always feel a fresh pleasure in recounting these simple but delightful adventures.

All the horde, who could hardly separate from me, accompanied me as far as the river Louri, four leagues distant from the Gamtoos; where we stopped to take leave of our good friends, and to regale them with some glasses of brandy, and some pipes of tobacco. The women, who during my abode in the neighbourhood of their kraals had been attached to my Hottentots, and who perhaps regretted a little the want of my kitchen, absolutely insisted upon going with us. But I had frequently observed, though I pretended not to see it, that my people had repeatedly quarrelled; and the effect was, that they had relaxed in their service: on this account I obstinately persisted in refusing to permit these women to go with us, or to remain with me. One of them only seemed to me to be very active: I found that she was very careful of my cows and my goats, and that she washed my linen well. These reasons concerned myself; but there was another motive which pleaded very strongly in her favour. My faithful friend Klaas had conceived a violent affection for her: to part them would have been to tear two hearts at once, to be severe without any advantage, and to be cruel towards him who would have laid down his life for me on every occasion. By a policy, therefore, the opposite of that which any other would have followed, I resolved to retain her. This mark of preference shewed how much I distinguished Klaas from his companions: whether it was owing to injustice or weakness, I could not resist the wish I felt of making at least one happy, since all could not be so; and I afterwards had no reason to repent of my conduct. This woman I named *Ragel*. Those services which she had always done were assigned to her; and she attended me every where till the conclusion of my tour.

When the horde had left us, we prosecuted our journey; but a violent storm obliged us to stop at *Galgebos*. It was about five in the afternoon when we halted: the place was far from being destitute of beauties, and I would cheerfully have remained here some time; but we could not discover a single rivulet. We therefore passed
[the

the river *Van-Staade*, at the distance of two leagues; and unyoked at seven on the borders of a lake, where we could get water enough for our whole caravan.

To how many useful processes and inventions does not accident sometimes give rise! It often answers us better, and by means much more simple, than any of those which are suggested by our own lights, our combinations, or our knowledge. Of this truth I experienced a convincing proof even in the place where I had stopped.

The horde from which I had just separated had come to us in the morning to bring us a large supply of milk; with which I had filled a jug almost to the brim, and placed it in my waggon, proposing to use it on my journey for allaying my thirst. The storm by which we were overtaken had so cooled me, that I did not taste it the whole day: but in the evening, after our fires were kindled, wishing to distribute it among my people, I found that it was sour. I therefore desired it to be poured into a vessel to regale my dogs; but I was much surprised to find it converted into most excellent and beautiful butter, which was owing to the jolting of my waggon. This discovery, which I afterwards practised during the rest of my journey, supplied me not only with fresh butter, but a most salutary supply of buttermilk, which I frequently used, and which no doubt tended to preserve me in good health and strength.

The following day we were prevented from prosecuting our journey by a second storm, which was really terrible. The hail which fell was as large as pullets eggs; and my cattle suffered so severely, that I was under great distress on their account. One of my she goats was so terribly wounded, that I was forced to kill her: which was indeed a real loss. I regretted the want of her much, for she was big with young.

At length the weather changed, and we quitted our lake; and about noon, after passing two rivers, the great and the little *Swaar-Kops*, I desired that my oxen should be unyoked on the banks of the latter. Having discovered the prints of some animal's feet with which I was unacquainted, my people, to whom I shewed them, assured me that they were not those of the rhinoceros. As my camp was arranging, I followed them; but night

coming on I lost them, and returned without having seen any thing. On this river, which was a pretty considerable one, we found another horde of savages. The kraal consisted of nine or ten huts, inhabited only by fifty or sixty persons at most. These people recommended to me not to cross the river Bossiman, which passes near this place: they said it would be much better to turn off to the left, and to push farther into the interior part of the country, to shun a numerous troop of Caffres, who frequently alarmed that canton, and carried fire and sword along with them; that nothing was seen all around but disorder and pillage, fields ravaged, and habitations desolated and reduced to ashes: that the proprietors, to avoid sudden and certain death, had abandoned their possessions, dragging behind them a few feeble remnants of their flocks; and that, in a word, I ought not to go near the country of Caffraria. This alarming caution, I must confess, at first startled me a little: I immediately called a council of my people, to deliberate what plan it would be most prudent to pursue. I was very anxious to sound the disposition of every one. Their unanimous opinion, which perfectly coincided with my private intention, was, that we should at first shun, but not in such a manner as to hinder us too much, this dangerous troop of Caffres; that, as we were very near them, we ought always to be on our guard both night and day; that, to avoid being surpris'd, we should never encamp but in the open field; that our oxen, when out at pasture, should be guarded by four men, armed with fuses; that my horses should never be suffered to quit the stakes to which they were tied, that in case of an alarm they might be always ready; and that my large fusee, well loaded, should remain at the camp; and that three shots, fired at equal distances, should be a signal for those, who on account of their various occupations might be obliged to go to too great a distance from the common center, to get again to the main body.

Having taken these precautions, and given the necessary instructions for their being observed, I mounted my horse; and, followed by two of my people well armed, we made a strict search all around, to discover whether there were any of the Caffres ranging in the neighbourhood,

hood, ready to fire upon the first that might be seen concealed with a view to surprise us, in case I should not find it possible to take him prisoner. Not one however appeared. Having proceeded a little farther after dinner, I observed that the river, as far as its mouth, was bordered with prickly trees; that the ground near it was sandy, and covered with underwood; and that in its environs there was plenty of game, some of which I killed for provision. As we saw no appearance that could give us any trouble, I was convinced we had nothing to fear at this time from these Caffres, said to be so terrible. I desired that my camp should be moved next morning, and we left the *Swaar-Kops*. The horde of Hottentots, terrified merely by the name of these cruel avengers, proposed that we should settle ourselves at a considerable distance thence, that we might not be in the neighbourhood of Caffraria; and, when they saw me depart, they sought leave to follow me, and to put themselves under the protection of my camp. This request I readily consented to; and though at bottom I was very happy at the proposal, I artfully made a merit of it, as much with a design to keep them dependant upon me, as to encourage my people by this formidable body, and to support their courage. There could nothing more fortunate have happened; I reinforced my troop; and, besides the particular resources of this horde, I had the advantage of my artillery, which could oppose whole clouds of assagays*, and baffle all the efforts of an army of savages, should I be well seconded. In less than a couple of hours all the huts were taken down and packed up, and with other effects put on the backs of our spare oxen.

At first I made the half of the men belonging to this horde set out before me, with all their cattle, giving them two of my people well armed to defend them. They carried with them one of my horses also; that, in case of any accident, they might be able to give me earlier intelligence of it.

About an hour after I ordered my relays, cows, sheep, goats, and all the women of the horde, with their children mounted upon their oxen, to follow them, and a party of their men to walk behind. This company was

N 3

defended

* A kind of lance which the Caffres use with much dexterity.

defended also by six of my chasseurs. My three carriages, with the rest of my people, brought up the rear. I myself, mounted on my very best horse, in order that I might have my eye every where, rode backwards and forwards on the wings, and from right to left, continually terrified that I should be suddenly surprised; for I can safely aver that, had the leader been once dismounted, the rest of the caravan would have been exposed to the most horrid butchery, and must have become the prey of the time.

I was fully armed. In the side pockets of my breeches I had a pair of double barrelled pistols; I had another pair of the same kind at my girdle; my double barrelled fusée was slung by the bow of my saddle; and a large sabre hung down by my side, and a poniard or dagger from the button-hole of my vest: I could therefore fire ten times almost in a moment. This arsenal incommoded me a good deal at first; but I never left it, both on account of my own safety, and because by this precaution I seemed to add to the confidence of my people. My arms no doubt, appeared to them to answer to my resolutions; and, full of this idea, each prosecuted his way with the utmost composure, leaving with me the care of defending them.

This caravan exhibited on its march a singular and entertaining sight. I may even say grand. The turns which it was necessary to make in pursuing the windings of the bushes and rocks, gave it constantly new forms; and these points of view changed continually. Sometimes it disappeared entirely from my sight; and suddenly, from the top of a small height, I would again discover at a distance my van-guard slowly proceeding towards a hill; while the main body, who without disorder, were following the footsteps of those who had preceded them, was almost under me. The women suckled their children, and gave them meat and drink seated upon their oxen beside them; some wept, others sung or laughed; and the men, smoking their social pipe, talked together, having no more the look of people frightened at the approach of an enemy.

Being rather more uneasy than these walking machines, I was fully awake to my critical situation; and on the back of my horse indulged myself in philosophical rever-

ries.

ries. Three thousand leagues distant from Paris, the only person of my species among so many natives, encompassed and guarded by the fiercest animals, I could not help being filled with surprise, to think of myself conducting, for the first time, in the deserts of Africa, a savage horde, who, yielding voluntarily to my orders, executed them blindly, and committed entirely into my hands the care of their preservation. Considered in a body, I had nothing to dread from them: nevertheless I saw some among them who would have made my heart ache, if, in single combat, strength alone had been to decide the contest: but at bottom I was fully satisfied, that here, as well as in other places, policy and not strength was supreme arbitrator.

We had not made great progress when my dogs, which were brushing through the bushes on every side, began to stop short and bark. My companions were immediately filled with terror; supposing that we had fallen in with some of the Caffres, lying in ambush to intercept us; but I gave very little heed to their absurd reasoning. I considered it as impossible that my advanced guard could have passed without an attack; and I observed that they were quietly pursuing their journey, without the smallest appearance of disorder. I therefore spurred my horse; and advancing through the bushes, was much amazed to find only a porcupine, encompassed by my dogs, from which it was attempting to defend itself. I instantly killed it; and dreading lest the report of my musket might lead my people into a mistake, and occasion their taking some rash step, I returned towards them, and by laughing at their timidity convinced them that it was not trifles which would intimidate me.

The manner in which a porcupine defends itself is surprising. Its quills screen it from every attempt; and, when a dog comes near, it cunningly eludes him, makes its attack on his flank, and when once he is wounded he never again attempts to return to the charge. Some of the quills always continue sticking in his flesh, which flags his courage, and occasions his betaking himself to flight. One of my Hottentots, who had been wounded in the leg by one of them, was ill for upwards of six months.

Mr

Mr Mallard, an officer of the regiment of Pondicherry, at the Cape of Good Hope, having been pricked in hunting one of these animals, had nearly lost his leg by the wound; and, in spite of all the care that was taken of him, he endured dreadful tortures for more than four months, during the first of which he was confined a close prisoner to his bed.

The porcupine, is however excellent eating; and the flesh is often served up on the genteel tables at the Cape, having been carefully smoked first.

After an hour and a half's travelling, I ordered my caravan to stop; but we halted no longer than was necessary to gather a sufficient provision of salt on the borders of a brackish lake which we observed in our way; and, two leagues farther, I proceeded before the rest, to examine a plantation which I perceived on our left. I saw that it had been plundered and burnt by the Caffres; for nothing remained of it but a few pieces of the walls, blackened with smoke, and calcined by the flames: affording a very dismal appearance in the heart of a desert!

About an hour after, my advanced guard was stopped by the Kouga, on the banks of which we pitched our tents.

The Kouga, is properly speaking, merely a rivulet, but we scarcely saw any water in it; there was only a small quantity in some hollow parts, where we caught abundance of excellent tortoises, though of a very small size; the largest did not exceed three pounds. Before night came on I ordered an abbatis to be erected of the branches of trees, to be a defence round my cattle: and, as this was executing, the women were employed in gathering whatever dry wood they could find in the neighbourhood, to furnish us with fuel; as it was unavoidably necessary to kindle fires in different places, lest we should be taken by surprise by the Caffres, or by lions, which were now very frequent in these cantons. We continued here till the 20th, when we began to need provisions; but I was so lucky as to kill three buffaloes and two bubales. On the banks of the rivulet I found some Guinea hens, very like the European. When boiled a long time, they were excellent; but when roasted or broiled, they were fit for nothing. They were apparently too old.

I got

I got also some new species of very pretty birds; and, among others, a barbet, of which I shall give some coloured figures.

We went up after this to the banks of the Kouga, still in the same order we had hitherto kept; but we had not travelled an hour, when my advanced guard stopping sent to inform me that they had observed the prints of men's feet. Terrified, they imagined them to be the traces of the Caffres, and they now saw nothing surrounding them but these savages. Hastening quickly to the spot, I observed that the traces seemed very fresh; and as this discovery was now turning very serious, I was sensible that we ought to put ourselves in the best position of defence, without loss of time. I therefore ordered the whole caravan to stop; and as my people were busily employed in forming a fence around the oxen, and in arranging my camp, followed by my two intrepid chasseurs, I set out to reconnoitre. Having followed the traces for an hour, they led us to a place where we saw the remains of a fire not yet extinguished, and a few bones of mutton, which had been lately gnawed. By the fire it appeared clear that the savages who had stopped here, had also spent the night on the same spot; but, on observing the gnawed bones, I could scarcely suffer myself to suppose that they had been Caffres, because these people never breed sheep. It was not, however, impossible that they might have got them by plunder, or have found them among their enemies. Amidst the uncertainty into which these reflections had thrown me, I determined to advance still farther; until at length tired of traversing and ranging the country, and finding that these traces led us too far from our road, and conducted us to one directly opposite to that which we ought to follow, I returned to my camp. The following night we met with little disturbance; but the next day a most terrible storm of rain obliged us to remain closely shut up in our tents; and the succeeding day we were under the disagreeable necessity of passing the unlucky Kouga fourteen times successively, which every quarter of an hour prevented our travelling, and particularly shook my carriages dreadfully upon the stones and fragments of rock which it carried with it in its course. This fatiguing interruption, so often

ten repeated, obliged us to pass the night near a small torrent named *Droge Rivier*, the Dry River: for our cattle were so wearied that they were not in a condition to carry us any farther; and the circumstances of the time did not suffer us to make long marches. Whenever we halted, a great deal of time was needful to arrange our camp; to prepare food for more than an hundred animals; to boil provisions for a still greater number of people; to superintend the safety of all these individuals; to collect wood for making fires, and to keep them burning during the whole night. These occupations became very laborious; but they were indispensibly necessary.

Our dogs thought proper that evening to be our purveyors. All the country was filled with Guinea-fowls, which at sun-set perched by hundreds on the trees which surrounded us, in order to spend the night. They made a constant and disagreeable cackling: but it was useful to us, for these simple birds discovered themselves by it; and our dogs, which heard them, began to run round and to bark at the bottoms of the trees where they sat. These Guinea-fowls attempted to escape; but the weight of their bodies, and the shortness of their wings, not suffering them to fly above the trees, and being forced on this account to run and to leap on the ground, our dogs watched them in their passage; and, seizing them with their teeth, soon killed them. This method of hunting furnished us with abundance of these animals, without spending a single grain of powder. Next morning I determined to pursue the same plan; but these birds, more on their guard by the fate of the preceding evening, did not come down. However, one discharge of my musquet had the desired effect.

This night, we heard at a distance the roaring of some lions.

On the 23d, after a journey of some hours, we came to the large and beautiful river of *Sondag*. Its channel was very full; the weather threatened rain; and the fear of being again stopped by an inundation, made us resolve to pass it on rafts. Having ordered a sufficient quantity of wood for this purpose to be cut down, and what might be needed for inclosing our cattle in the common way, when we should encamp, I embarked my carriages piece

by

by piece, with the greater part of my effects, and the half of my people, who pitched our tents on the other side, under the care of Swanepoel. The cattle passed over by swimming, as they had before done on similar occasions; and the next day I also crossed the torrent with the remainder of my company and effects. The preparation, execution, and arrangement of all these matters, gave us employment till the latter end of the month.

Meanwhile I procured several birds, and caused some koedoes to be salted. But I very nearly lost my dear Kees. The recital of this accident will give a better idea of my simple and uniform manner of passing my time than any thing else I could write on the subject.

Every thing was prepared for dinner; and I was dressing upon a plate some dry haricots which I had just fried, when I heard the note of a bird with which I was quite unacquainted. Forgetting in a moment both my cookery and dinner, I snatched up my gun, and hurried out of my tent. About half an hour after, I returned quite satisfied with my expedition, and holding my bird in my hand; but I was much surprised, on entering my tent, not to find a single bean on my table. This was a trick of Kees. I had chastised him pretty smartly, the preceding evening, for robbing me of my supper; and I did not suppose that he would have so soon forgot his punishment, as to be guilty of this new crime almost immediately after it. He had however disappeared; but as he always waited the return of night, when he had done any thing amiss, before he again made his appearance, I well knew that it was impossible for him to elude me. It was in general at the time when I was drinking tea that he slipped in, without noise, and took his station beside me, in his usual place, with an air of innocence, as if nothing had happened. That evening he did not make his appearance; and next morning, as no body had seen him, I began to be very unhappy, and to be apprehensive that he had deserted me altogether. This loss would have been the more afflicting, as, besides the entertainment he afforded me, he was really very useful, and did me such service that his place could not have been supplied by another. The third day after, however, one of my people, who had been in quest of water, assured

assured me that he had seen him in the neighbourhood; but that he had secreted himself as soon as he found that he was discovered. Setting out immediately in search of him, I traversed all the neighbourhood with my dogs. Suddenly hearing a cry like that which he used to make when I returned from hunting, and when I would not take him along with me, I stopped; and looking around every where, I at length observed him, half hid, behind a large branch in the middle of a tree. I called him in a familiar way, and coaxed him as much as was in my power to descend and come to me; but as he did not seem inclined to trust to these marks of my friendship, and of the joy which I expressed on meeting with him, I was obliged to climb the tree. When I had come to the spot where he was, he permitted me to lay hold of him; while fear and pleasure were alternately painted in his eyes, and expressed by his gestures. Immediately after I returned to my camp, where he seemed to wait for his verdict; and where I came to a determination concerning him. I thought at first that I should tie him up; but this would have deprived me of his amusing tricks. I determined therefore to be generous towards him, and not to treat him harshly. A second correction would not have changed his disposition: and I considered that he had perhaps more than once received it very undeservedly; for his reputation, which gave a colour of probability to every accusation made against him, hurt him very much in my opinion, and rendered me unjust, more especially when I was in bad humour. A fondness for dainties caused my Hottentots to commit several petty thefts, which were often laid upon him; on this account poor Kees was many times blamed without reason.

The source of the river Sondag is in some high mountains, which are almost always covered with snow; on which account they are called *Snow-Bergen*, or the mountains of snow. I observed them on my left towards the north. This river, enlarged by some small streams which run into it, throws itself into the sea at the distance of ten leagues from the place where I then was.

We pursued our route in the usual order on the 1st of October. Having travelled seven hours, we reposed ourselves for a little under the ruins of a deserted habitation, like

like the former, and no less dismal and melancholy. We halted at a lake at four in the afternoon; and it was very lucky for us that we had two large fires that night, as two lions and some hyænas visited us, which threw our cattle into great confusion. We were forced to pass the whole night on our legs. These animals appeared so ferocious, that we could not drive them away but by repeatedly discharging our fire arms.

At day-break we saw such numbers of those antelopes called *spring-buck*, that I determined to employ the whole day in hunting them; especially as our provisions began to fall short, and as it was often necessary to have a fresh supply. The consumption made by all my people was so great, that a just idea can hardly be formed of it; for by carrying a whole horde and their animals along with me, I had added an additional incumbrance, at which I was sometimes frightened. However, we were fortunate enough to kill seven of these antelopes. Though this species are swift-footed, people on horseback may easily overtake them. Being generally collected into flocks, and keeping as closely together as sheep, they mutually impede each other, which greatly retards them in their flight: one ball, well aimed, will kill two or three of them, and sometimes more.

The following day we made a forced march: we had found bad water the preceding evening; and to procure better it was requisite that we should fall in with some turn of the river Sondag. We luckily reached it at four in the afternoon. My oxen had suffered so much from the extreme heat, that they were not able to proceed farther; and I feared that some of them would die, though I had taken the precaution of often relieving them.

We quitted the river entirely on the 4th; and proceeded that day only three leagues, as the heat was almost insupportable. My oxen having not then quite recovered from the fatigue of the preceding evening.

We set out at three in the morning on the 5th; and at seven we saw another deserted plantation. Oppressed by fear, without doubt, the proprietors had not taken time to secure their effects from pillage. On the sight of this abode, which was in a perfect state, and which exhibited no marks of fire, it appeared to me that the inhabitants

had been terrified without any cause. I had the curiosity to enter the house, and found that I was not deceived in my opinion; for I perceived no derangement in any of the furniture, each utensil being in its proper place. I permitted none of my people to touch any thing, of whatever value it might be; but, as the heat was excessive, I took advantage of the shade which this building afforded us, in order that we might refresh ourselves a little. About evening I prepared to set out; and we continued our journey for four hours.

The next day we passed two more deserted houses, which were in the same state as those seen the evening before; but, I did not visit them, being unwilling to stop. After a march of four hours, we arrived at the river *Vogel*, or bird's river, where we halted, as our oxen were in want of water, and had scarcely any thing to eat. At noon the heavens became overcast, and the sun was wholly hid by very large clouds; which to me was a fortunate circumstance, as it gave me an opportunity of proceeding a little farther. We were in hopes of reaching *Agter-Bruyntjes-Hoogte*; but, when we came to the foot of these mountains, we met with a pond, which obliged us to encamp, as we doubted much whether we should soon find another.

The savage Hottentots perceived our fires during the night; and, as they were approaching to reconnoitre us, our dogs, who observed them, took the alarm, and began to bark and make a terrible noise. On this occasion part of my people, convinced that we were invested by Caffres (for I must here repeat that fear made them think that they perceived Caffres every where), proposed to leave the camp, and to shelter themselves in the bushes; as if we should have been in greater security, when separately concealed in a miserable coppice, than when collected in a body, well armed and resolute. Klaas and I were quite furious. The venerable Swanepoel joined us, with a view of encouraging these dastardly souls; and he swore that he would stand by me whatever the event might be, and that he would spend the last drop of his blood in my defence. In the midst of this conversation, and the timid irresolution of the rest of my company, I heard a voice begging, in broken Dutch, that I would recal my dogs, which

which I immediately did. When I was fully assured that these people were only Hottentots, I suffered them to come near them ; upon which they made their appearance, to the number of fifteen men, with several women and children.

They had set out to remove themselves from the flames of war ; and I was informed by them that when I passed the mountain I should still find several deserted habitations. They told me also that the proprietors of these different houses had collected themselves into one body, to oppose the enemy ; but that they had formed a resolution of abandoning their country and possessions entirely, with a view of getting nearer to the Dutch settlements ; and that the Caffres, who were still in the field, had sworn not to leave one of them remaining.

It was in conversation of this nature that I passed the night ; and learned from these people every thing that I wished to know : but I was the less inclined to consider the Caffres as ferocious animals thirsting after blood, who spared neither sex, age, nor their neighbours, as I was too well acquainted with the planters to confide in their veracity, or to ascribe to them a part of those horrid cruelties of which they always affected to complain.

But why should a people so mild as the Hottentots, and who lead a life both quiet and precarious, be concerned in these horrid wars, had they not cause sufficient for shewing their revenge and resentment ? The Caffres naturally are not a mischievous people. Like the other savages of this part of Africa, they live on the milk with which they are supplied by their cattle ; and clothe themselves with the skins of animals. Like the rest, they are naturally indolent, and by necessity warlike ; but they are not an odious nation, whose name is calculated to fill with terror. Being very desirous of getting every information as to the motives and rise of these atrocious wars, which thus disturbed the peace of the most beautiful parts of Africa, these honest people, who had trusted to me with so much confidence, unboresomed themselves in the like manner without any reserve. They told me, indeed, that the cruelty and oppression of the planters were the sole cause of the war, and that justice was on the side of the Caffres : they likewise told me that the Boshomens, a

kind of vagabond deserters who belong to no nation, and who live only by rapine, took advantage of that moment of disorder to pillage without distinction the Caffres, the Hottentots, and the planters; that nothing but the tyrannical behaviour of these wretches could have made the Caffres include in the general proscription all the Hottentots, whom they look upon as spies attached to the whites, and whom the latter employed to lay snares for them with more dexterity. This last circumstance was not without foundation; but it could not be applied to the more remote hordes by any means. Thus were the innocent involved in the common fate of the guilty. But how was it possible for savages to make a distinction which even polished nations are not accustomed to do? They told me, besides, that the Caffres had got some fire arms, which they met with in those plundered houses, or had taken by surprise from the Hottentots belonging to the colonies.

I was, in short, informed in the most particular manner of every thing that had passed, of the attacks made, and the battles fought, in which, though they had committed horrid ravages, the Caffres had always been beat, which did not appear surprising to me. The assagay, their most destructive weapon, which they handle very dexterously, cannot stand in competition with our fire arms, employed by chasseurs who seldom miss their aim. What I had learned interested me very much, for the least circumstance could not be indifferent to me. I found myself engaged, on my own account, in the events and chances of this war; since I was actually, as one may say, on the field of battle; and was approaching towards that moment, when wounded to the soul by the distressing spectacle which I had constantly before my eyes, and inflamed with the most ardent desire of serving those unfortunate wretches, with whom I was unacquainted—whom I had never seen, nor was perhaps ever to see; but whose dismal situation excited my compassion—I was preparing, if all these people would have followed me, to traverse fifty leagues of Caffraria, at the hazard of every thing that might happen; and to re-establish peace in that unhappy country for ever. However, not a single person seconded my views. In my opinion, Heaven itself, could hardly have freed those who followed me from
their

their fear: but I can more justly cover with opprobrium those cowardly Hottentots of the colonies whom I visited two days after, for the shameful manner in which their chief refused to give me assistance in an expedition which would have without doubt succeeded, and done the highest honour to humanity.

A fresh misfortune, which had taken place a little before in these unhappy countries, added considerably to my courage, and heated my imagination. I was told that, about six weeks before that, an English ship had been wrecked on the coast; that being driven on shore, some of the crew had fallen into the hands of the Caffres, who had put them all to death, except a few women, whom they had cruelly reserved; and that all those who had escaped led a wandering life on the coast, or in the forests, where they must soon perish in misery. Among these unfortunate people, there were said to be several French officers, prisoners of war, who had been put on board in order to return to Europe.

This distressing intelligence gave me much uneasiness; and, after all the information which these people could give, I judged that, by going fifty leagues to the eastward of the spot where I was, I should arrive at the vessel. I therefore formed a thousand projects in my mind, and invented a thousand different schemes for assisting these unfortunate people, whose situation was so deplorable: but the whole of my Hottentots revolted against my proposal; and neither threats nor intreaties could have the least influence over them. The account of this adventure had made very different impressions on them. A rumour was suddenly spread throughout my whole camp; and had I not, assisted by some of my brave friends, terrified these wretches by my looks and gestures, I should have doubtless fallen a victim to their sedition. Into one of them I struck great terror by clapping a pistol to his head; but all my endeavours were in vain. The horde who came with me, without any preamble, informed me that they were free; that they no longer looked upon me as their chief; and that they would immediately return, with the fifteen Hottentots who had lately come. Even my own people, with a determined air, told me they did not incline to be cut to pieces by thousands of Caffres, u-

unanimously assuring, with loud vociferation, that they would not go along with me; and that they would, immediately, set out for the Dutch settlements. I however kept steady to my purpose, and opposed them to the very last; but neither my representations, nor the entreaties of Klaas, had any effect, except upon two of them, who at length consented to run all hazards with me. Old Swanepoel, was one of them: but what could four of us have done by ourselves? I remonstrated in vain with these savages on the ingratitude with which they repaid my condescension, in permitting them to attend me, and on their so easily forgetting the care, provisions, and protection, I had given them. It was of no avail I told them that I looked upon them all as cowards, traitors, and more detestable enemies than the Caffres: I only increased their fear, and filled them with hatred against myself. I could discern in all their faces that fear had got entire possession of their hearts. For this reason I determined to say nothing more; and when night approached, after having ordered watch to be kept with the greatest attention, I shut myself up in my tent. Being told at break of day that these strangers were preparing to set out, with their wives, children, cattle, and all their effects, I forbade any person to take leave of them; and, gave immediate orders to have every thing ready, that I also might set out and prosecute my journey. In four hours we passed the mountain Agter-Bruyntjes-Hoogte; and, being refreshed by a shower of rain which came seasonably to our relief, at the end of four hours we encamped, in order to spend the night. As we marched along we saw some more deserted habitations, the proprietors of which were no doubt among the number of the confederates. The soil in this place seemed to be, in general, good; the mountains were overspread with large beautiful trees: and the plains, interspersed with the *mimosa-nilotica*, abounded with antelopes and gnous: the latter, though good provision, are notwithstanding inferior to the other species of antelopes.

According to the information I had got from the fifteen Hottentots who had incited the horde to revolt, and deprived me of their assistance, I computed that I could not be very distant from the place where all these Hottentots

tentots of the colonies were met. I always flattered myself with the hopes of finding among them some well-disposed people, who approving of my scheme of pacification with the Caffres, and the hopes of assisting the unhappy sufferers who had been shipwrecked, would heartily concur with me, and second my endeavours to relieve them. The idea of these wretched people haunted me on every side; and I could not help reflecting on the miserable situation of the poor women, who were condemned to drag out their existence amidst the torment and horror of despair. These thoughts were constantly present to my mind, and attached me more and more to my scheme; for the desire of restoring them to liberty, and of bringing them back again with me, still more shut my eyes against any impediment that might be in the way; and made me see only the possibility of success: I was therefore anxious to get to this horde of Hottentots.

The next morning, after a three hours march, begun at the break of day, I at length observed the habitation I so much longed for. As soon as these people saw me, though at a great distance, I saw them all gather together, and form themselves into a group, before the house; while their motions, confusion, and the attention with which they all at the same moment turned their eyes towards me, evidently shewed that my appearance considerably alarmed them, and that my convoy, above all, gave them great pain. I however advanced, and, addressing them politely, made myself known, and told them my name. I pretended to be travelling under the protection of the Dutch government, to which I was obliged to give an account of my discoveries. This conclusion of my discourse, which was very concise, seemed to impress them with great awe; they then received me with every demonstration of joy, and testified with how much pleasure they saw me. They owned that my beard had terrified them a little (it had then eleven months growth); that they were at a loss what to think of my arms, my waggon, and my numerous train; that they had frequently heard me made mention of; and that an hundred circumstances had been told them, in which I had been in danger of losing my life; but that they had at last been assured that I had met with a vessel at anchor

chor in Blettemberg bay, which had carried me to the isle of Bourbon; and that for this reason, when they saw me arrive, they had at first supposed that I was another person. After a great many questions, to which they scarcely gave me time to give them an answer, I mentioned the motives that had led me to pay them a visit; and the resolution I had taken of penetrating to the extremity of Caffraria. I could not avoid expressing to them my surprise that they had not before attempted to save the unfortunate Europeans, of whose fate they were not unacquainted; that I hoped to find amongst them men willing and ready to accompany me to the coast where their vessel had been lost; that the Dutch government would, undoubtedly, reward in a noble manner, the authors of such a glorious enterprise; and, to encourage them the more, I added, that amongst the cargo of the vessel, part of which was still on the coast, each of them might easily procure a thousand comforts for the remainder of their lives. This argument appeared to have some effect upon them at the time; but I entertained very few hopes; though they eagerly replied that, if things were as I had represented them, it was very proper to go to the assistance of these unhappy people; who, as they said, were their brothers, and their fellow-creatures.

The most cunning, as being the most timid of the whole company, considering my speech only in that view in which his interest was concerned, added in name of the rest, that it was more than probable that the Caffres had already plundered the vessel, and taken away the principal part of the cargo; that they should perhaps find nothing at all, or, if any thing, not so much as would indemnify them for the hazards and expences of such a journey; and that, during their absence, their wives, and children, would be left exposed to the danger of being massacred by the Caffres.

I was fully persuaded, from this discourse, that nothing could tempt them to undertake this expedition. It seemed that they could not carry away a great number of cattle from their enemies; for, since the commencement of hostilities, after sharing twenty thousand, these savages could not have many remaining, as they had been forced, in order to preserve those which had escaped pillage, to
carry

carry them a great way into the interior parts of the country.

I used every argument in my power to overcome this man's reasoning, and I frequently told him that he forgot above all the miserable people for whom I had come to solicit assistance: but he had corrupted his companions, and, after that, not one of them shewed the smallest inclination to second me. As there was no profit in view, I could no longer depend on their assistance.

Finding it in vain to try any farther to move them, I had recourse to imprecations. I threatened them with all the vengeance of government; I wished that swarms of Caffres might surround their habitations; and, fearing that their example might influence my own people, among whom I found some obedience and attachment, I instantly set out to pursue my journey.

I had noticed that they were reinforced by a pretty numerous company of Mestizo Hottentots, who are courageous and enterprising, and come nearer to the whites than the Hottentots. As they had always been foremost to march against the Caffres, and to signalize themselves in all rencounters, I determined to leave three of my people behind me, with orders to insinuate themselves among these Hottentots; and to engage some of them to follow me; particularly those who were acquainted with the country, and who understood the language of the inhabitants. Before I allowed them to depart, I instructed them in what manner to proceed; and being anxious to approach the river *Klein-Vis*, I appointed them to meet me at the place. Three hours after we arrived at this river; and, having crossed it, I ordered my caravan to halt, as it was necessary to sleep here, in order to wait my people's return, and to hear how they had succeeded in their negociation. Having perceived the prints of some lions feet, I took as many precautions not to be surprised by these animals as I had taken against the Caffres. I should not have been very uneasy with regard to the latter, had it been possible for me to find any means of letting them understand that I was not among their persecutors; and that I neither belonged to their nation, nor had the same sentiments with them: but they might have fallen suddenly upon my camp, and occasioned great devastation, before we
had

had explained ourselves to each other. This consideration led me to choose for this time, contrary to my usual practice, an elevated spot for my camp; from which I might have an extensive view every where about. When I had fixed upon one, I ordered my tent to be erected; my carriages and oxen to be properly placed; and a few huts, for the sole purpose of making a shew, to be erected at the distance of a few paces. I then pitched my military tent within a gun-shot of my camp, and laid branches of trees upon it, that it might not be observed; as I intended to pass the night in it, along with my people: by this manœuvre I deceived the enemy; for had they appeared, with a view of surprising me in my camp, they would certainly have been disappointed, to their own ruin. I should then have had time to fall upon them, and to surprise them in my turn.

We did not spend the night very quietly, for our dogs disturbed us so much that we got almost no sleep.

At day-break, I observed three of my Hottentots at a distance advancing towards us, accompanied by three strangers: one of them, whose name was Hans, the son of a Hottentot woman by a white man, had lived almost all his life among the Caffres, and spoke their language very fluently. By giving him a few glasses of brandy, which I had kept in store, I soon gained his confidence; and made him inform me of every thing that I wished to know, as to the state of affairs at that time. What I learned confirmed me in my opinion, that the Caffres in general are a harmless and peaceful people; but he assured me that, being constantly oppressed, plundered, and massacred by the whites, they had found themselves under the necessity of taking up arms in their own defence; adding, that the planters every where alledge, that these people were barbarous and sanguinary, in order to justify their own robberies, and the cruelty which they daily exercised against them, and which they attempted to give the semblance of reprisals; that, under pretext of their cattle being seized, they had, without respecting age or sex, exterminated whole hordes of Caffres, plundered them of their oxen, and laid waste their lands; that this method of getting live stock appearing to be much easier than to rear them themselves, they had employed it so imprudently,

imprudently, for more than a year, that they had shared above twenty thousand among them; and that they had butchered without mercy all those who had attempted to defend them. Hans informed me that he had been witness to a particular transaction, which I shall relate here exactly as he told me.

A company of planters having massacred a Caffre village, a young child about twelve years of age escaped, and concealed itself in a hole, where it was unluckily discovered by a man belonging to a detachment of planters. This man desirous to make a slave of it, carried it along with him; but the commander taking a liking to it, insisted upon its being put into his hands. The person who found it strenuously refused to give it up: both sides grew warm; and the enraged commander, running up in a furious manner to the innocent victim, cried out to his opponent, "if I cannot have the child, it shall not be yours; upon which firing his fusée against its breast, it fell down dead on the spot."

I was likewise told, that, in order to entertain themselves, these wretches had often placed their prisoners at a certain distance, and tried who was most expert in hitting them with their guns. I should never have done were I to mention all the horrid cruelties which they daily commit upon those unfortunate savages who are under their protection: but private reasons, and other very powerful motives, oblige me to be silent. Besides, what avails the voice of a single feeling individual, against despotism and force? I have said enough to shew the character of the planters of this part of Africa, whom the inactivity of government suffers to go on in their excesses, and is even terrified to punish. In this place are committed all the cruelties which hell can devise. In a republican state, more remarkable than any other by the simplicity of its manners, and philanthropic spirit, the most villianous iniquity passes unpunished; because people do not deign to look beyond those objects which are beside them. If the governor receives information at times, as to these horrid abuses, the distance, the time required to carry intelligence to him, and other circumstances, perhaps, which it may be prudent not to inquire after, disguise

disguise it so much when it reaches the town, that it scarcely furnishes subject for the conversation of a single day.

A planter comes from the distance of an hundred leagues ; he enters his complaint to the governor that the Caffres have carried off all his cattle ; and he requests a *commando*, that is to say, authority to go and recover his property with the assistance of his neighbours. The governor not suspecting any deceit, or pretending not to discover any, takes every thing in the same point of view it is represented to him, and sees nothing but justice in the demand of an impostor : a previous enquiry would occupy too much time, besides being troublesome and embarrassing. To grant permission is easy ; it costs little expence, and is only a single word. This fatal word is therefore written, and it becomes the sentence of death voted against thousands of savages, who have neither the same resources nor the same means of defence. The inhuman wretch who thus deceives the credulity of the governor, returns satisfied amidst the accomplices of his rapacity, and gives to his *commando* whatever latitude he may find serviceable to his interest : a new massacre then takes place, which is only a prelude to more bloodshed ; for if the Caffres have the boldness to recover, by force or by stratagem, the cattle taken from them in consequence of this order, surreptitiously obtained from the governor, and which continues in force till there are no more victims for them, these planters satiate their vengeance by the most horrid carnage.

In this manner did this war, or rather this pillaging continue all the time that I remained in Africa. Neither commercial speculations nor a desire for any service conducted me to the Cape. The natural impulse of my inclination, and a desire of gaining new knowledge, made me direct my course to that part of the world : I arrived there perfectly free, and with a mind in no respect biassed by prejudice. I made myself better acquainted with the inland parts of the country, and the unknown natives who inhabit it, than with any of the colonies belonging to the Cape, or even the Cape itself, which I did not know, but at the different periods of my return. I had no personal interest in my view to make me be suspected of partiality ; but I have in every place seen
very

very powerful reasons for observing, that the foreseeing eye of policy has been opened too late on those possessions, which are at a distance, and which daily become more remote from the metropolis. I have noticed that a governor's authority, however great it may be, does not extend far enough to check at their source those terrible irregularities, which are continued, and still increasing, in the inland parts of the country. Should it ever happen that Caffres, constantly harassed, unite in support of the common cause with the neighbouring nations, who begin also to complain of the planters, their union would undoubtedly occasion the greatest disorder; and who knows what might be the result of such a confederation, formed for the purpose of defending inalienable rights, and of avenging ancient injuries? There are many ways by which government might put a stop to these misfortunes; and it is full time that they should be employed, for the danger is increased by delay. There have been instances of the governor, when informed of some cruelties exercised against the savages, summoning in vain the person who was the author of them to come to the Cape, and give an account of his conduct. The criminal has even not so much as deigned to return any answer to the order sent him; he has continued to harass and plunder in the same manner as formerly: and his disobedience has been attended with no bad consequences to him; nay it has even in a short time been forgotten.

While discoursing one day with a few of the planters on these abuses, several of them told me that they had repeatedly received such orders from the governor, without ever paying the smallest attention to them. Growing a little warm in the cause, I expressed my surprise that in such circumstances the governor did not send a party to enforce obedience to his orders; and, in case of refusing, to seize upon the culprit, and conduct him to town under a strong guard. "Are you well aware," said they, "what would be the result of such an attempt? Assembling all in an instant, we would massacre half of the soldiers, salt their flesh, and return it by those we spared; threatening to do the same thing to those who should have the assurance to appear among us afterwards." Such was their answer; to which I thought

it would be quite useless to offer any reply. To deal with people of this character, must be a very difficult work; and no little share of address will be requisite to reduce them to obedience. I think it is not impossible, that, shaking off the yoke, they may some day dictate laws to the head of the colony; and that will happen when a man of abilities, gaining the minds and confidence of the multitude, shall present to them, under seducing colours, a view of liberty and independence. They are already too sensible of the facility with which such an enterprise may be undertaken; and of the advantages that will result from its success. Nothing will be necessary but to put them in mind that they are about ten thousand in number, all cunning and resolute, and all accustomed to hunting; that every shot they may discharge will do execution: that without the least difficulty, or danger, they may beat and destroy any forces with which the governor may oppose them; that they will enjoy abundance whenever they cease to acknowledge the irksome and often tyrannical laws of government, which are contrary to every kind of private prosperity; that placed in a delightful climate, the possessors of the finest fields and the most beautiful woods in the country, well stocked with game of all sorts, they may, by adding to all these advantages those of cultivating the earth, and breeding flocks, have within themselves, every resource that arises from barter; and that, by means of the harbours and roads which are to be found in great abundance on the coasts of their territories, it is in their power to bring the industry of other nations amongst them, to extend their population, to increase their riches, and to have every convenience that an extensive foreign trade can afford. The government at the Cape are already fully sensible of the importance of these reflections; and this perhaps is one of the justest reasons of their apparent supineness with respect to the planters. They know the genius and character of these robust people, almost all educated in the midst of the woods; and they were more cautious in their conduct towards them during my residence at the Cape, because they thought the fate of the whole town relied upon their powerful assistance, had the English in the war of 1781 attempted to make a descent there,

there, as they expected. The following anecdote will shew how far they might be depended on:—An alarm having been spread, though without any ground, in less than twenty-four hours, from a thousand to twelve hundred of them came in fight in a body; and these would have been followed by all the rest, had not an order been issued to prevent them.

Even those however would be in a great mistake, who from what I have mentioned should imagine that all these planters are so many Cæsars. This is very far from the case; and indeed such an idea would not agree with the accounts I have before given when mentioning their war with the Caffres, and of their possessions every where abandoned and forsaken. Born for the most part among rocks, a savage and rustic education has made them like so many giants as to strength; but, though familiarized from their earliest days to watch and surprise the monstrous animals of Africa, they are absolutely unfit but for a first attack, or to second in an ambuscade. They would not stand in the open field, nor would they ever return to a second charge. They are unacquainted with that courage which is taught by a sense of honour, but with that only which proceeds from a consciousness of one's strength or dexterity; and if the reader recollects my adventure with them in the Bay of Saldanha, it may be easily seen that it tends strongly to confirm what I have here advanced. The same thing cannot be said of the greater number of the women. Courageous with reflection, their deliberate coolness knows neither opposition nor fear; being equally skilful with their husbands in managing their horses, and in the use of fire arms, they are much more indefatigable, and never retire on the appearance of danger: they are real Amazons.

I knew a widow who managed her own plantation; and when the wild beasts came to alarm her flocks, she mounted her horse, followed them in close pursuit, and never left them till she had either killed them, or obliged them to quit her grounds.

During one of my excursions two years afterwards to the great Nimiqua Land, I saw upon a very desert plantation a young girl of twenty, who always went along with her father on horseback, when he took the field, at

the head of his people, to drive off the Boshmen who came to disturb his repose. In the face of their poisoned arrows, she would follow them with fury, overtake them in their way, and fire upon them without pity.

The history of the Cape mentions a great number of women who have signalized themselves by acts of valour which might do honour to the most resolute of the other sex.

The tragical fate of a widow, who resided upon a very remote plantation with her two sons, the oldest of whom was not more than eighteen years of age, still afforded a subject for conversation at the Cape, when I came there. One dark night she and all her family being awakened by the kicking and bellowing of her oxen and cows, which were in an enclosure not far distant, every body seized to their arms, and hastened towards the place from which the noise came. When they came to the spot, they found a lion, which, having got over the pales, was making dreadful destruction among the cattle; and no other resource was left but to enter the enclosure, to seize the ferocious animal, and to kill him. None of the slaves or Hottentots belonging to this woman had however courage enough to try this expedient; and even her two sons would not venture to present themselves before the ferocious beast. In this dilemma the intrepid widow entered by herself, armed with a musquet; and penetrating to the lion, which by reason of the darkness was scarcely visible, she discharged her piece: but unfortunately the animal being only wounded, darted upon her with the utmost violence, and overthrew her. On hearing the cries of their poor mother, the two children flew to her relief; and becoming desperate at this horrid sight, while the formidable lion was engaged with his prey, they fell upon him, and strangled him, though too late, on the mangled body of their mother. Besides several deep wounds which she had got in her throat, and other parts of her body, the lion had torn off one of her hands above the wrist, and devoured it. Every possible assistance was immediately given to her: but she died that evening in great agony, amidst the unavailing lamentations of her children and slaves gathered together about her.

I have

I have already mentioned that Hans gave me every information that I required as to Caffraria. He informed me that the territories in which I then was, belonged to a powerful prince, who lived thirty leagues distant from us, to the northward, and that he was called king Faroo. He recommended to me to penetrate as far as the place of his abode; assuring me that I had no cause to fear, and no hazard to run: on the contrary, he told me that both the prince and his subjects would receive me with great satisfaction; in hopes that, when I returned to the Cape, a relation of what I had seen of their manners, their character, and their manner of life, would efface those unfavourable impressions every where entertained of them, from the accounts of the planters, whom they hated; and that perhaps they would then be suffered to enjoy tranquillity, the only request which they sought from the white people.

At first sight, this reasoning was plausible and alluring and I was fully convinced of all the advantages which might arise to me from the execution of such a project. I suffered myself, indeed, to be almost convinced; but, on the other hand, if through prudence, or excess of confidence, I should lose the fruits of all my travels, or if I should happen to be slain, this step would be considered as a masterpiece of folly and extravagance. I well knew the changeable and unsteady disposition of the offspring of the whites and the Hottentots; and I recollected, for the first time, on what this man might be capable of doing. The bribe of a single glass of brandy might make him a traitor: he was friendly to the Caffres; had spent part of his time among them; and, besides this, he had come from a retreat which I had every reason to dread, and was there perhaps only to watch the motions of the planters, and to betray them. It might not be impossible that his design was to sacrifice me, that he might share my effects with the Caffres; and to gain some merit among them, by seducing me into a snare?

Having duly weighed these motives for a long time, and agitated by a thousand contrary ideas, and incapable of taking any resolution myself, I suddenly fixed upon an easier and much more prudent plan. Thus I gained a little more time to indulge in new reflecti-

ons, and to get better information, without hazarding either my person or my fortune. I determined to send a deputation to king Faroo; and, on the first proposal made to Hans, he accepted this commission without the smallest scruple. Though his conduct upon this occasion appeared to preface well, I was however determined to take every precaution. This young mestizo promised to engage two or three of his friends to undertake the journey along with him; and to these I added two of my most confidential Hottentots, Adams and Slanger, who were to give a relation to the king of every thing which I had done for eleven months before, from the time that I left the Cape. That he might be enabled to judge that curiosity alone had brought me to his territories, I charged my messengers to inform him that, being born in another world, and above all a stranger in Africa, I was in no respect either a friend to the planters who were conducting the war against him, or an accomplice in their designs; that I did not even live amongst them; that I highly disliked their conduct; and, in a word, that he might rest assured that, while I remained in his country, he would have no reason to be uneasy at my conduct or motions, as they tended to one harmless end, that of gaining such objects as related to my taste and studies; and that, far from carrying ravage and terror into his territories, I would on the contrary seize every opportunity of being beneficial to his subjects and to himself, as I had been to several Hottentot hordes, who neither doubted my sincerity, nor declined my assistance: I added, that the government at the Cape, to whom I would give a just account of every thing I had seen, would lose no time to restore quiet to his territories, and to re-establish that harmony which had subsisted between him and the planters. Having instructed my deputies in this manner, especially those belonging to my camp, to whom I enjoined the greatest secrecy as to certain particulars which I entrusted to them alone (such for instance, as the express orders I gave them to bring some Caffres along with them, that I might be able to judge what degree of confidence they placed in me, and to see how far I ought to grant them mine), I gave them a few presents for the prince, and sent them away. Having promised to re-
turn

turn speedily to Koks-Kraal, where I was to wait for them, each of them made such provision as he thought needful, and then they set out.

I set out myself in the morning; and, after a march of three hours, we found ourselves on the banks of the Groot-Vis-Rivier, where the heat was intolerable. Though the earth, which was overspread with large round pebbles, made the way exceedingly laborious for the oxen, we went along the banks of the river, but, spent with fatigue, we were obliged to halt, at the distance of three hundred paces from its current: it was then only four in the afternoon. Whilst we were making the usual preparations to enable us to spend the night in peace, I walked towards the banks of the river; not far from which I observed the remains of a kraal belonging to the Caffres. Curiosity having led me to go up to it, I found several huts perfectly complete, and others altogether demolished: but I saw a more dismal spectacle in some human bones which lay scattered here and there. From their apparent age, I supposed that they were the relics of those unhappy wretches whom the planters had made the first victims of their vengeance; and that they had been left there since the beginning of this unjust war.

We spent the night of the 10th without the least interruption. Some hyænas, indeed, visited us; but being accustomed to such guests, they gave very little trouble. In the morning, my Hottentots, when they returned from procuring us water, told me that they had seen several fresh traces of koedoes* and hippopotami. As our supply of provision was nearly spent, and the weather favourable, I determined to spend this day in hunting.

My people having separated themselves on the edge of the river, that they might discover the precise spot which these hippopotami frequented, I myself went to the opposite side, in hopes to find some koedoes or other game. I however saw only a few straggling antelopes, and some flocks of ostriches. As I was on foot, and finding that I could not by any means approach them, I began to suspect that all the day would be spent in contemplation and coursing; but, after having traversed a great deal of ground, I suddenly noticed, in a plain which was covered

* The *antelope oryx* of Pallas. T.

vered with long grafs and a few shrubs, seven koedoes, which very fortunately did not observe me. Followed by a man who went with me, I approached with great precaution; and, when we were within two hundred paces of them, I desired him to fire first; for, as I was convinced that I could overtake these animals by running, I wished to reserve my shot till the most dubious moment. The moment he had fired, they all betook themselves to flight, as I supposed, but very fortunately as they passed me, about thirty paces, I killed the only male one which was in the flock. My Hottentot insisted that this was the animal he had fired at; but I satisfied him he was mistaken, for we found only one wound and ball in it. Having covered it with a few branches of trees, and tied my handkerchief to the end of a pole, which I fastened to the ground, to frighten away ferocious animals, we set out in search of the rest of the koedoes; because, the male being slain, I was convinced that the females would not go far. We noticed some traces of blood, which plainly evinced that one of them had been wounded: and indeed, at four hundred paces distant, we found one just expiring. My Hottentot, whom I had reproached for a bad marksman, was highly flattered by this event; but he had taken his aim at the male, and it was by chance only that he hit the female. Having taken off the skin, and taken out its bowels, we thought we might then both of us be able, as the distance was not very great, to carry it to the spot where we had left the male. Being considerably fatigued by this labour, and our appetite beginning to be whetted, we kindled a few sticks, and broiled the liver. I cannot say whether it was owing to our hunger, or to the delicacy of the food, but I recollect that, though we had neither salt nor bread*, I could scarcely be satisfied with it; and that this was one of the most exquisite repasts I ever made in my life: after this we tied the four feet of the animal together, and with a pole carried it upon our shoulders to the other which we had killed. I then sent off my Hottentot to bring me two horses, with a few of his companions, and we soon carried the game to our camp. Some instantly filled the kettles with it, while

* The latter I had not eat for some time,

while others broiled steaks of it upon the hot coals; and, in less than two hours, two thirds of the flesh was gone.

While provisions are plenty, the Hottentots are gluttonous, but, in times of scarcity, they can be satisfied with a very little. In this respect I may compare them to hyænas, or other carnivorous animals, which devour all their prey in a moment, without thinking on futurity, and which indeed remain several days without finding any food, and are sometimes forced to appease their hunger with clay. A Hottentot can eat in one day ten or twelve pounds of meat; but, on urgent occasions, a few locusts, a piece of honeycomb, and often a piece of the leather of his sandals, will satisfy him. I could never make mine understand that it was prudent to keep a little provision for the following day. They not only eat as much as they can, but they distribute the fragments to whomsoever they meet with; they are never disturbed as to the consequence of this prodigality. *We will hunt*, say they—or *we will sleep*. The latter is a resource which often relieves them in cases of necessity. I never travelled those barren and desert places, where game is rare, without seeing whole hordes of these savages lying asleep in their kraals, a too certain mark of their wretched situation; but what may appear very remarkable, though I have observed it more than twenty times, is, that they can sleep, and deceive at their pleasure the most urgent want of nature. There are however some wakeful moments which prevail against custom, and all their powers. In such cases they use another expedient no less wonderful, and which, though scarcely credible, is nevertheless so certain that it cannot be denied. I have seen them confine their stomachs with a leather bandage, in order to abate their hunger, which they support for a long time, and appease with very little. This curious plan of employing ligatures is also among them a general cure, which they use for all diseases. They bind a close bandage round the head, or any other part affected, and think that in repressing the distemper they drive it away. I have been more than once present at such operations; and, after they had done according to the patients wish, I have seen them become quite composed, and reply with more readiness when I enquired tenderly how they were,
and

and assure me they found great ease. However whimsical this custom may seem, it would not be so commonly adopted by these people, did it not answer the high idea which they have formed of it.

The Hottentots whom I had sent in quest of hippopotami soon returned, and told me, that in coasting along the river they saw one in a place so covered with reeds, that it was impossible to reach the water in order to examine it more closely, but that every time he drew near to the surface to breathe they had heard him distinctly; that they had in vain fired several times to frighten him, and make him alter his situation; and that probably next morning he would take another spot more favourable to our designs. They had fallen in with about twenty buffaloes also, but they did not kill one of them.

The following night, being the 11th of the month, we were visited by some lions, hyænas, and jackals, which kept us constantly on our guard till two o'clock in the morning. The smell of our steaks and fresh provisions had no doubt attracted them. We found it very hard to keep our horses still, and especially the one I had purchased from Mr Mulder in the country of Auteniqua. On hearing the cries of these wild animals, this young horse was so frightened, that we were obliged to put shackles on his four legs, and double reins to his head, to prevent him from killing himself: the appearance of day restored to us however our former quiet.

The preceding evening I had sent a Hottentot to reconnoitre Koks-Kraal, which was the rendezvous where I had agreed to wait for my deputies. They had been gone only three days; and as I could not expect to see them so early, I thought that this retreat might enable me to adopt a new plan of life; and it was here that I purposed for a little while to erect my petty empire, if bad news, or some misfortune, did not oblige my messengers to return. I had however no time to lose; and foresight, always more indispensable, and which I made a most rigid law, sufficiently spurred me on to be expeditious. On the report of my commissioners, I judged that we might encamp very conveniently in Koks-Kraal; and the first view of this charming place did not disappoint my expectation. Having reached it in three hours,

we

we found an enclosure about fifty feet square, formed by a dry hedge of branches of trees and thorns; it was broken down in some places, but it needed scarcely a day to repair it. For sheltering our cattle the discovery of this enclosure was so much the more fortunate, as it commanded a view of almost all the neighbourhood; on one side we noticed the river, from which we were not more than three or four hundred paces. Wild beasts, however, were not the chief objects of my disquiet; I thought more of securing them from the Caffres scattered through the country. I considered that, not knowing the pacific steps which I was following with one of their kings, and being unacquainted with my manner of thinking as to them, they might every moment come to attack my camp; and the person whom I chiefly feared, was he to whom I had entrusted the conditions of my embassy. Having seen with his own eyes the number of people which continued with me, and my strength as well as my weakness, and knowing from my own information my plan and the place where we were to meet, he could either corrupt such of my people as accompanied him, or betray and kill them by the way. What was there at that period to prevent him from coming unexpectedly at the head of a numerous party, and falling upon me, and, by one of those strokes too frequent in war, effacing my name from the number of the living? I must openly acknowledge, that with the well-formed design of selling my life at a dear rate, my terror increased according to the precautions which I took every day with regard to my safety; but, as the time after the departure of my embassy increased, my thoughts became a little calmer: long absence diminished the danger, and at length these dismal ideas became familiar to me.

Having desired my large tent to be pitched without the enclosure, and at one of its ends, I caused it to be surrounded by a few false huts to deceive the enemy, as we had attempted at Klyn-Vis-Rivier. At the one end of the enclosure, opposite to my tent, and in one of its corners, we formed a separate place for my horses, with another for the sheep and goats. Near these I fitted up my small tent, in which I intended to sleep; and we raised the hedge of the enclosure so much with prickly trees, that

that it was not possible for any ferocious animal to leap over it: by these means my flocks were quite safe in a space forty feet square, which was abundantly wide and convenient. This sort of a fortification might, if needful, have even answered both me and my people as a place of retreat, where we could have repelled two thousand Caffres.

These regulations satisfied all my companions, still more unhappy than their chief, and I saw them resume by degrees their former cheerfulness. We did not however forget the usual precautions on the approach of night: about fifty paces from each side of the enclosure we lighted large fires, to frighten away the lions and the hyænas, and, for the greater safety, we kindled others around us. This arrangement was attended with the completest success. I followed my ordinary employment, and thought of nothing else but hunting. Having observed the first afternoon some peroquets flying about in the air in order to go and drink at the river, I watched for them, and was fortunate enough to kill one of them. It was a new species, which has never yet been described: it comes nearer in size to that of the ash-coloured peroquet of Guinea; the colour is generally a green of different shades, but the legs and the tip of the wings are of a beautiful orange. I shall give a full account of it in my description of birds. We were likewise visited in the day-time by considerable troops of *barwians*, or apes of the same species as my friend *Kees*. These animals, amazed to see so many people, were still more so at seeing one of their own kind remaining very quietly among us, and to hear him answer them in good language. One day they came down from a little hill which was near my camp; and in less than half an hour upwards of an hundred of them, prompted by curiosity, surrounded us, constantly repeating *gou-a-cou, gou-a-cou*, for *Kees's* voice had emboldened them much. There were many of them of a much larger size than the rest, but they were all of the same species: they performed a thousand tricks and gesticulations, which would be in vain to attempt describing. Those would be greatly deceived who should judge of them from these degenerated apes, which pine in a state of slavery, languor, and fear, in Europe, or which

which are stifled by the caresses of our ladies, or poisoned by their dainties. The thick atmosphere of our climates damps their natural liveliness, and destroys them, neither can they be made to laugh but by means of blows.

A singularity however, which I have already had occasion to take notice of, attracted my attention. Kees, which I held by the paw, though he knew these animals to be of the same species, and replied to them, would never go near them. I dragged him towards them, but, contented with being on their guard, they shewed no signs of fear, and saw me approach with as much tranquillity as Kees shewed agitation in resisting. He suddenly made his escape from me, and ran to hide himself in my tent. The reason of this terror was probably owing to his fearing that they would carry him along with them. He was very strongly attached to me, and I wish to do him honour for this feeling. In the mean while the rest of the apes continued their gesticulations, and appeared to force themselves to shew tricks and to cry for my amusement, till wearied by their noise, and this spectacle, I wished to get myself another. On firing a gun, all my dogs were soon at their heels; and it was very entertaining to see in how light a manner and with what velocity they fled; they dispersed themselves immediately, and, leaping from rock to rock, disappeared as quick as lightning.

I was awakened on the 13th very early in the morning with the cry of a bird to which I was a stranger. Its tones, which were full and well supported, had no affinity to any thing of the kind I had ever heard before. As they seemed to be really extraordinary, I instantly got up, and got close to the bird without being observed: but as it was scarcely day, I saw it but very indistinctly through the bushy branches of a tree where it perched, and I was so unlucky as to let it escape. By its flight, however, I could observe that it was a goat-sucker*; I indeed was not mistaken, for some days after I had an opportunity of killing a good many of them.

VOL. I.

Q

This

* The goat sucking owl; called also in some parts of England the churn owl, or fern owl.

This is a very different bird from the goat-sucker known in Europe, and which has only one plaintive cry similar to that of the common toad, which probably has occasioned its French name*; but that of Africa is very distinct, and such as cannot possibly be imitated. It continues singing for hours after sun-set, sometimes even all the night; and this difference, added to that of the feathers, makes it a new species.

I likewise killed many very pretty birds; and among others a barbet†, of a very small unknown species, and a cuckoo which I called the bawler‡, because its shrill cry may indeed be heard at a very great distance: this cry, or to speak more correctly, this song, has no affinity to that of our cuckoo in Europe, and the plumage also is quite different. In this canton, I also found a great number of the golden cuckoos which Buffon describes under the name of the *green golden cuckoo* of the Cape. This bird is certainly the most beautiful of its species, for its plumage is enriched with white, green, and gold. Sitting on the tops of large trees, it always repeats, and that with a varied modulation, these syllables, *di, di, didric*, as distinctly as I have written them; for this reason I have given it the name of the *didric*. As I was thus entertaining myself in pursuing some small birds, I observed a flock of vultures and crows, which were making a great noise, and soaring round about in the air. When I came to the spot almost below them, I saw the remains of a buffalo, which had been devoured by lions probably not twenty-four hours before. When I first saw the field of battle, I concluded that the conflict must have been really terrible; all the ground about seemed to have been beat and trod upon; I could number how often the buffalo had been thrown down, and I found tufts of the lion's mane scattered up and down, which the former had undoubtedly torn away either with his horns or his feet.

Having seen near to this spot, which was not very distant from the river, the fresh traces of two hippopotami, I followed these traces, and easily noticed the place where
the

* *Crapaud volant*, or the flying toad.

† *Bucco capensis* Linn.

‡ In French *Griard*.

the animals had again entered the water. I listened with great attention, but I heard nothing; and the banks of the river were so loaded with reeds and shrubs, that I could not get near to them. These animals therefore had every advantage to enable them to hide themselves, and to shun rising up from the water to breathe. It would have been spending time to wait for them; the dinner hour was approaching, and I was both wearied and hungry. As I had gone too far in search of my goat-sucker and other birds, I set out on my return to the camp by the shortest road; and while I was proceeding towards the east, and directing my route by the sun, the report of a gun, fired almost at my ear, startled me, and filled me with the greatest apprehension, as it was not expected. Satisfied that it could only be fired by some of my people, I ran towards the place from whence the sound proceeded, and found one of my worst marksmen wasting my powder to no purpose. He informed me that he had been watching an hippopotamus from day-break, that he had fired at him, and that he had not the smallest doubt of his being killed. A very bad marksman may sometimes do execution by chance; and although it was necessary to watch more than a quarter of an hour before we could notice the animal rise up from the water, I determined to watch him myself, and to send my Hottentot in search of more people; giving him in charge at the same time to bring me some food. In about an hour and a half, which I spent very impatiently, my people came up, but the hippopotamus had not appeared. The hunter however assured me, that after he had fired he had seen him plunge into the water, and had observed also a violent ebullition and several spots of blood upon the surface. He added, that as the current was very strong, the animal might perhaps have been carried down by it, which I thought by no means improbable; upon this account he set out in expectation of finding it lower down, while I went again to my camp to dissect the birds that I had killed.

About three this afternoon we were overtaken by a dreadful storm; and the forest upon the border of the mountain was repeatedly struck with lightning. One of my people came back with an antelope he had killed;

and he who had fired at the river horse returned very late without having seen any thing. This disappointment afforded his companions a subject for ridiculing him. He became the object of the sarcasms of all my wits; every one laid in his word; and they wished to convince him that the animal at which he fired had been but a guana*. These pleasantries being insensibly turned into abuse, I perceived that their ridicule was about to be concluded by a combat with fists; but by a single word I put an end to their warmth, and silenced the orators.

The rain on the 14th fell so plentifully during the whole night, that it put out our fires, nor were we able to light them again. Our dogs made a terrible noise, which kept us all from sleep, but we saw no ferocious animals. I noticed that in these rainy nights the lion, the tyger, and the hyæna, are quite silent, and then it is that the most danger is to be dreaded; for as these animals never cease on such occasions to range through the fields, they fall on their prey without giving warning, and without allowing people time to be upon the watch. What still increases the dread which this disagreeable circumstance occasions is, that the moisture deprives the dogs of their sense of smelling, and for this reason they are useless. My people were too well convinced of this risque; for when the rain had extinguished our fires, it was with great difficulty they could be prevailed on to light them again, so much were they in dread of being surprised.

It must be confessed indeed, that stormy nights in the deserts of Africa give a picture of desolation, and people find themselves involuntarily struck with terror. When overtaken by these deluges, they soon penetrate a tent, and wet all the mats; continued flashes of lightning in their rapid passage exhibit a momentary blaze amidst the most profound darkness; the loud claps of thunder, which burst forth on all sides with a terrible noise, seem to clash together, and are multiplied by being re-echoed from hill to hill; the cries of domestic animals, and a few intervals of awful silence, all tend to render the scene more terrible, while the danger of being attacked by wild beasts still in-

creases

* The guana is a large kind of lizard, very common in the rivers of Africa.

creases the common dread: nothing but the appearance of day can lessen the terror, and restore quiet to nature.

The next morning was still gloomy: the atmosphere was loaded with clouds, and the rain redoubled at intervals. Being therefore very little inclined to go abroad, I employed myself in reviewing my collection of birds, which I had recently preserved. As I had a quantity sufficient to fill a box, I arranged them in one with much care, and daubed it over with pitch as usual, to prevent insects from penetrating into it. The number of those which I now possessed, together with those I had before sent from the country of Auteniqua, exceeded seven hundred.

The sky became serene about four in the afternoon, and very seasonably revived our drooping spirits. We therefore resumed our ordinary occupations, and I entertained myself with causing my people fire at a mark, which gave them much entertainment. From time to time I took care to allow them this indulgence, as it exercised them; and I observed, from the beginning of my journey, that their courage increased in proportion to their dexterity: but they held it as a great favour what I allowed only with a political view of rendering my caravan more secure. The customary prize was a portion of tobacco; a bottle hung from a rock was the mark, and the terms were to break it at the distance of two hundred and fifty paces. One named Pit won the prize that day at the fifty-fourth shot; and he very generously shared it with all the rest of the contenders. The balls were not all lost; they were almost all got at the bottom of the rock, but it was needful to get them all cast over again.

About sun-set the sky seemed to announce fine weather the following morning, I formed a design of hunting hippopotami in proper form. I therefore sent several men to try what discoveries they could make upon the banks of the river: we cleaned all our fire arms, and cast several balls of a large size, into which I put, according to the African manner, an eighth part of tin. By these means balls are capable to make a greater resistance, and they penetrate better, because they do not turn flat when they meet with bones. Their effect would be more cer-

tain if it were possible to use pure tin only; but being then much lighter, they would not fly so far, nor hit so exactly. When our fires were kindled for the night, which was not readily done, as the earth was damp, and our wood very wet, I regaled my people with tea, and I am convinced that upon one ounce they poured at least fifty pints of boiling water.

This evening was one of the most entertaining I had ever enjoyed. I got still the same jokes and the same merry tales from these good people, who, all seated about a large fire, endeavoured to entertain their master, and, anxious to engage his attention and give him evidence of their attachment and sincerity, made him easily forget what masterpiece was crowned that day in such or such an academy. My Lyceum was certainly as good as any other of the same kind. The valour to be exhibited next morning in hunting the hippopotamus was chiefly brought upon the carpet: every one expected to be of the party; and I had great difficulty to arrange it so as to please all. I was anxious that some of these sportsmen should be dispersed throughout the country, to shoot antelopes, on which I had more dependance for provisions than on hippopotami, as the banks of the river were so spread with reeds and large trees, that it always seemed to me more and more difficult to discover them, and to get near to them. As night was in the mean while advancing, and as I did not find those hunters arrive whom I had sent out to make discoveries, I desired my largest fusée to be fired three times; yet it was nearly half an hour before they got any answer. At length, however, we overheard, four or five minutes after each other, three reports, which gave us cause to conclude that they had perhaps fallen in with some of these animals. A quarter of an hour thereafter, we heard three reports more; but the sound did not appear to proceed from so great a distance as the former: at length the firing continued at stated intervals, and appeared more and more to approach us; which led us to believe that these unhappy people were pursued by some ferocious animals. For this reason, I ran immediately to meet them; and, when I found them, they seemed to be trembling and in great terror. They had, however, seen
nothing;

nothing ; but, by the restlessness of the two dogs which they had carried with them, it was too clear that their lives had been in hazard from lions, and that they had narrowly escaped. The dogs indeed had not deceived them. I learned from them likewise, that they had heard the snorting of some hippopotami above the place in which they had hid themselves : this account refreshed my hopes ; but, as we had great need of rest, I retired to my tent. Scarcely had I fallen asleep, when, at about half an hour after eleven, I was quickly alarmed by the roaring of a lion, which was heard by another, that seemed at first to make answer from a very great distance ; but in a quarter of an hour the latter joined him, and both of them began to prow! around our camp. We marched about, however, with so much courage and speed, and we fired so frequently, that we frightened them by the noise, and obliged them to leave us. We had now no question that they were the same which had followed our hunters. On this occasion they were obliged for their safety to the dogs, which they had taken along with them : being told by them of the danger which threatened them, the signals of distress meant for us had been sufficient to keep the enemy at a distance.

It is almost impossible to conceive how much the boldest dogs tremble when a lion approaches. Nothing is easier than to discover, by their looks, in the night time, what sort of wild beasts are in the neighbourhood. If a lion, the dog, without stirring from the spot, begins to howl in a most dismal tone ; he seems very uneasy and restless ; he comes to his master, keeps close by him, and fawns upon him as if he meant to say, *You must defend me*. Other domestic animals are under as great agitation ; all of them get up ; none of them remain in a lying posture ; and the oxen bellow in a plaintive way, but with a low voice. Horses beat the earth, and caper about in every direction ; goats shew their fear also by peculiar signs ; and sheep, with their heads hung down, collect themselves into a body, and press as closely against one another as they are able. They appear then as one mass, and continue in that position without the smallest motion. Man only, haughty and confident of his own superiority,
takes

takes up his arms, his heart beats with impatience, and pants after his victim.

On these occasions the terror of Kees was still more evident. Equally frightened by the reports of our guns which we fired on the approach of the lion, the least motion would make him start; he moaned like a sick person, and dragged himself along by my side in a most languid state. My cock appeared only astonished at the convulsive agitation of my camp, while a common hawk would have cast him into the utmost consternation. He was more afraid of the smell of a weasel than all the lions of Africa together. Thus every animal has some enemy which it defies, and the latter in its turn yields to a stronger. Man, however, defies all, but those of his own species.

We observe indeed that animals of the same species fight with one another; but they are led to this, merely for a moment, by love, the only passion which disunites them, after which every thing again returns to its former course. A more continued and permanent dislike may however be observed among domestic animals. Is this the consequence of education or of example?

But again as to the different marks by which danger is announced, and it may be readily understood that nobody has had a better opportunity of observing them in the minutest manner. All the books and compilations, and all the speculative elocution in the world, can never overthrow observations so frequently repeated on the grand theatre of the African deserts.

If a hyæna prowls in the neighbourhood, the boldest of the dogs pursue him to a certain distance, and seem to be very little afraid of him; and an ox continues lying still without shewing terror, unless it be a young one, which now for the first time hears this dangerous animal. The case is the same with the horse, which, with his foot fastened to his halter, continues all night in the meadows, and exhibits no kind of terror.

If it be jackals (a sort of foxes) that are ranging around, the dogs follow them briskly as far as they can; unless, luckily for the latter, there should be lions or hyænas in the neighbourhood; for as soon as they observe them

them, fear forces them to return, and brings them soon back again to their retreat.

The Hottentots alledge that the jackal is a spy to other wild beasts, and that it comes to provoke and hinder the dogs, in order that the lion or the hyæna, taking that opportunity, may more readily lay hold of their prey, which, as an acknowledgement for the service received, they share with them in a friendly manner.

What I myself have seen confirms pretty much this assertion, which, perhaps, may be a little exaggerated. Whatever may be in this, it is certain that the moment the jackals begin their concerts, the hyænas never fail to come up speedily; but they do not discover themselves openly, till they see the dogs quite engaged. We always kept two of them linked together, to bark in the absence of the rest, in order to hinder the hyænas, which are less afraid of fire than the lion, from coming too near us.

The next morning, the 15th, day-light had scarcely come in, when we were on foot. After breakfast, I set off three hunters to the woods and the plain, with orders to go in quest of buffaloes, antelopes, gnous, and koedoes; whilst I took with me four of the best marksmen, and three men to carry my large fusée, ammunition, and a few pieces of dried flesh, lest we should be obliged to spend all the day in the field; and, leaving old Swane-poel, with the rest of my people, to protect the camp, we set out.

As we proceeded along the side of the river, we kept as close to the banks as we could, keeping the utmost silence. In this manner we proceeded three hours without observing any thing; but noticing at length the tract of an hippopotamus which must have passed that way during the night, we followed it for an hour and a half, and it led us to the place where the animal had thrown itself into the water; upon which we separated along the banks, at a certain distance one from another, to listen. The person who was at the farthest distance having discharged his gun, we ran towards him, and found that he had fired at the animal, but missed it. Very fortunately we did not wait long before we saw it rise again, and heard it breathe, but it had got to the opposite shore. Though the river was very broad, two of my people swam over, expect-
ing

ing to force it to keep at least in the middle, if they could not bring it within our reach. This scheme succeeded to our wishes; but the animal was so much afraid, that when it breathed it scarcely raised its nostrils above the top of the water. As it changed its situation every moment, it never discovered itself in the spot where we were waiting for it, and it plunged so often and so rapidly, that we scarce had time to take an aim. We had already fired thirty times without touching it. The two Hottentots who passed the river had no guns; and the cunning animal observing that they did not fire, kept always to that side. I therefore dispatched Pit, who had gained the prize in shooting at a mark, directing him to cross the river out of the animals sight, and join his companions by going a little way about, and, particularly, not to fire till he was sure of his aim: all which he performed with much intelligence. The animal, which on the other side of the water thought itself quite out of our reach, having no suspicion, raised all its head sometimes out of the water, and at one of these moments, Pit directed his shot so exactly, that the hippopotamus received it, and instantly dived. It was severely wounded, I am convinced, for it appeared soon after with the greater part of the body above the water, and agitated with convulsive motions. Embracing this opportunity, I fired, and lodged my ball in its breast, upon which it again dived, and did not appear till about twenty-seven minutes. Being then dead, it floated with the current, and some of my people swimming up to it, pushed it towards us close by the bank.

I cannot easily describe the joy which we all experienced when we at length saw this huge animal in our possession; but my people and I were actuated by very different motives. Gluttony led them to consider it as a delicious morsel, on which they were about to feed; whilst curiosity made me think it a very interesting object of natural history, which I had no knowledge of but from books and prints.

As the legs of this animal are very short in proportion to its bulk, we were so much favoured by it, that we could roll it to land, as we would have rolled a German bully. The animal was round likewise; and I could not be satisfied with admiring and examining this huge mass,
which

which was a female, with the greatest attention. Pit's ball had struck it directly above the left eye, and was found lodged in the jaw ; but I much questioned whether that had been the occasion of its death, as mine, on the contrary, entered precisely near the omoplate, it had broken one of the ribs, and passed through the lungs from the one side to the other.

The length of this animal from the muzzle to the root of the tail, was ten feet seven inches, and eight feet eleven inches round. The tusks, which were crooked, were only five inches long, and an inch in diameter at the thickest place, which led me to think that it was a young one. I found no fœtus in it ; and in its stomach there was nothing but a few leaves and chewed reeds. I even noticed pieces of branches of the size of a goose quill, which were only flatted. In the stomach or excrements, it is commonly observed that large animals, such as the rhinoceros and the elephant, triturate very gently the different sorts of food which they feed on.

The different figures of the hippopotamus hitherto given are very imperfect ; the best I have seen is undoubtedly that of Mr Allaman, professor of medicine at Leyden. It was engraved from a drawing sent to him by Mr Gordon. In my description of animals, I shall copy that which I drew myself, and I expect that it will give satisfaction to naturalists. Having finished my observations, I immediately sent off a Hottentot to bring two yoke of strong oxen the following morning, to carry home our prize ; and, as it was now dark, we pitched on a large tree, at the root of which we intended to spend the night : but we did not go far from the banks of the river ; for as we could not roll the animal farther, and were not willing to expose it to the hazard of being devoured by wild beasts, we were obliged to keep it in our sight. We were not surrounded or covered with many trees ; and this made our situation still more hazardous. We might indeed have been easily taken by surprise ; but by means of very great fires which we lighted up, and of twenty shots fired at intervals, we spent the night in perfect quiet. We however could not sleep, for we were tormented by myriads of gnats, attracted by the vicinity of the water, and the coolness of the place which we had chosen.

chosen. One of my Hottentots, who had fallen asleep, was so stung by them, that his face swelled to such a degree that we found it almost impossible to know him again.

I was careful to order one of the feet of the hippopotamus to be cut off, which my people dressed in the same manner as that of the first elephant I killed while passing the mountain called Duyvals-Kop, to go from the country of Auteniqua to that of Ange-Kloof. I found it very difficult to set my people to work, for they had spent all the night in stuffing themselves with the flesh of the hippopotamus. I saw them broil pieces two or three feet in length, and a foot in breadth; and they appeared to stand in need of nothing but sleep.

The foot of the animal which they had dressed for me during the night was served up for my breakfast; it was very nourishing; and I thought it even better than that of the elephant: it was fully more delicate, and I never eat any thing in my life with more satisfaction.

Although the hippopotamus is very fat, there is nothing in its grease disgusting; and it produces none of those bad effects which are occasioned by that of other animals. My people melted it, and drank it out of basins, as if it had been broth. Besides this, by rubbing it upon their bodies, they shone as much as if they had varnished themselves, and their swollen bellies sufficiently evinced that they had not been very sparing in their meals during the night.

I had neglected to order a horse for myself; but Swane-poel supplied this defect; for the heat was excessive, and we were at least six leagues from my camp. Having fastened a large chain to the head of the hippopotamus, and yoked twelve oxen to it, as they went along the banks of the river they endured much difficulty and fatigue, either from the uneven road, or from the trunks of large trees, which constantly interrupted their road; but when once we reached the level country, which was covered with long grass, I ordered the oxen to be relieved; and noticing that they went on at a good pace, I mounted my horse, to get before them. Yager, my favourite dog, which never left me, and always accompanied me in my hunting excursions, was obliged at this time to remain behind, as he could not keep up with me. He took the
example

example of my Hottentots, and arrived with them about five in the afternoon.

The three hunters whom I had dispatched in another quarter had also returned completely loaded, having killed two gnous and three antelopes; so that we were sufficiently stocked with provisions: but the extreme heat, and the friction of the hippopotamus upon the ground, had so mangled and hurt the body, that some of the most tender and delicate parts were spoilt, and began to smell. For this reason we were forced to spend the night in cutting it up: part of it was salted in the skins of the two gnous which my hunters had brought in with them; and the delicate morsels I ordered to be put into a brandy cask, the head of which we knocked out after we had drawn off the liquor into earthen jugs. This business gave my people an opportunity of getting drunk.

The following night our two lions came again, and I supposed that all the jackals and hyænas in the country had met together to pay us a visit. One of the hyænas had the audacity to cross our fires, and to come close up to the spot where we were. A Hottentot fired his fusée at it, but he unfortunately missed his aim. The jackals even came within our camp; and, had it not been for our dogs, we should have been obliged to divide our booty with these animals, which seemed resolved not to be disappointed.

The next morning my people were busied in cutting in pieces the hide of the hippopotamus, to make what the country folks call *chanboc*. These are whips for flogging the oxen which are below the hand of the driver upon the pole of the waggon: they are shaped like those used in Europe for horses, but they are thicker and longer; and as the skin, where it is strongest, may be about two inches thick, they are cut into thongs two inches in breadth, which makes these pieces about two inches square. They are sometimes six feet long and when cut out a weight is hung at their lower end, to make them dry sooner. A round shape is then given them by beating them with a mallet, being careful to make them taper to a point at one of the ends. Those which are made smaller for riding have this advantage over those made in Eu-

rope, that they never break, especially if from time to time care be taken to wet them with a little oil.

The skin of the rhinoceros is used for the same purpose; and the inhabitants of the Cape prefer it (although a whip made of this is far from being so solid as that made of the other), because it admits of receiving a finer polish, has the beautiful colour of horn, and becomes nearly as transparent.

As to the planters, who have no taste for elegance, and who prefer the useful to the agreeable, they use only the former. Both, indeed, fetch a very high price, as the animals from which the materials for making these whips are got are no longer found in the colonies, and as those individuals who sometimes proceed farther are not always sure of meeting with them.

However, the skin of these animals cannot be put to a better use. It has a great similarity, if we except its thickness, to that of the hog; and the hippopotamus comes very near to that animal. To those who had not been previously informed, their fat would appear to be quite the same; and, if that of the hippopotamus could be salted with all the necessary precautions, it might be used with more justice, as in all the colonies it is considered to be very wholesome. The people of the Cape are convinced that, taken in a drink, it is sufficient to cure radically those who are troubled with disorders of the breast. That which I preserved in bottles made of skins, had the common consistency of olive oil, amidst the severe colds of winter.

The tusks of the hippopotamus have a quality which renders them preferable to ivory. The latter, in time, turns yellow; but, in whatever manner the former may be used, they retain their whiteness in all its purity. It is not therefore surprising that the Europeans, and, especially the French, consider them as a great object of trade. By the assistance of art they make up the deficiencies of nature, and have a most beautiful appearance in a pretty woman's mouth.

This prize was so alluring that my Hottentots relied on having the pleasure of another hunting expedition; but I found that we had plenty of provisions, and that we could employ our time more profitably, and to vary
our

our occupations, or rather our pleasures, a little more. Having a great inclination to try my net here, it was with great difficulty we could pitch upon a place in the river convenient for casting it; we, however, somehow succeeded; but we caught only about twenty fish, of various kinds. The largest of them were scarcely six inches long; and when fried in the fat of the hippopotamus they seemed to me excellent. As this sport did not procure us any advantage worth while, and as I was disgusted with the embarrassment we experienced in getting near the river in the manner we wished, I desired the net to be carried away. While my people were busied in folding it, a bird perched near us, which, so far from being frightened by our presence, drew still nearer and nearer us, sending forth very shrill cries. I was informed that it was the bird which discovers honey; and I discovered in its gestures and cry a great similarity with those of the bird which ornithologists distinguish by the name of the *cuculus indicator*; but it was vastly larger than those which I had seen formerly. My Hottentots, who value it on account of the services which it does them, entreated me to spare it. A new species, however, was to be added to my collection, and I killed it. This bird is of the genus of the common *indicator*, but larger sized, and different in its feathers; it is a variety of it.

But I did more afterwards, for I killed three different species of these birds, all equally indicators.

The African savages are well acquainted with them, and treat them as deities. They live solely on honey or wax; and it is thus that involuntarily they discover where they will find large repositories of both.

Naturalists, for what reason I cannot say, place the *indicator* among the cuckoos; it has no affinity, however, to this genus, but in the shape of its feet; and being different by other physical characters, it is much more so by its manner of living. Running the hazard of being exposed to an anathema from the cabinets of men of science, I must always repeat that large volumes heaped up in libraries are nothing to the book of nature; and that an error, though supported by an hundred eloquent pens, remains an error notwithstanding.

This bird is no more a cuckoo than pies, barbets, perroquets, toucans, and all those species which have two toes before and two behind. If it is to be ranked in any known class, it rather belongs to that of the barbets, because it has more affinity to these.

I found nothing in its stomach but honey and wax: I did not find the smallest trace of any insect. The skin is thick, and so tough, that when it is fresh it can scarcely be pierced by a pin. This is an instance to me of the wonderful precaution of nature, which having appointed it to contend for its subsistence with the most ingenious of all insects, gave it a covering sufficiently strong to defend it from their stings.

It nestles in hollow trees, climbs up to it in the same way as the wood-pecker, and hatches its eggs itself. This circumstance is enough to distinguish it totally from the cuckoo, and to form a new genus.

Accurate figures will be given in my ornithology together with descriptions of the three species of *indicators* which I was acquainted with.

My Hottentot, Klaas, when he returned from hunting, brought me an eagle which he had killed. It was of a species I had not before seen, and which no author has yet described. For this service, I rewarded him properly, giving him a portion of tobacco; not that I needed to be generous to a man whom I sincerely loved, and to whom I could not refuse the least favour, without being cruel, but by his example to stir up all my people to make discoveries.

This bird, which was wholly black, appeared to me, by its characteristics, to belong rather to the vulture than the eagle species; but I was sensible that it differed in its manners. In every thing else, the analogy is very striking, for, when necessary, the eagle becomes a vulture; that is to say, when forced by hunger, if it meets with nothing better, for the moment, it feeds as well as any other bird of prey upon putrid carrion; and it is a great mistake to suppose that it lives only upon what it catches itself. When I ordered the fragments of the large animals we had slain to be scattered in the fields, in order to attract carnivorous birds, eagles and butcher-birds came to share in them, together with vultures.

I must

I must here beg forgiveness of the ancient and modern poets, for thus degrading the dignity of this noble animal: it is terrible I acknowledge, to see this sublime bird of the master of the gods fall shamefully upon the scattered fragments of an infectious carcase, and feed on it with great delight.

We spent part of the night of the 18th in firing our pieces to drive off two more lions, and a voracious troop of hyenas. I did not sleep till it was very late, and when I awoke I was greatly astonished to find about twenty Gonaqua Hottentots in my camp. This visit, and the consequences of it, merit a more ample detail. The reader, in this plain recital, will get juster ideas of the African savages, than from all the dissertations which philosophers have written.

The chief drew near to pay his respects to me, and the women marched in full dress after him. They all shone very bright, and had been newly *boughoued*; that is to say, after they had rubbed their bodies with grease, they had besprinkled themselves with a sort of red powder, made of a root named in the country *boughou*, and which has a very pleasant smell. Their faces were all painted in different ways, and each of them brought me a small present. One brought me ostrich's eggs, another a young lamb, and others offered me a plentiful supply of milk in baskets which seemed to be made of osier. These utensils surprised me exceedingly. "Milk in baskets!" said I: "such an invention certainly indicates a great deal of ingenuity:" And recollecting those milk vessels made of copper, which were long since used at Paris, before they were forbid by the wisdom of the police, I observed, on comparing them with the former, how far inferior a great people, with all their arts, their learning, and their Louvre, frequently are, in respect of their simplest necessities, to those whom they pretend to despise.

These beautiful baskets are woven of such delicate reeds, and so very close in their texture, that they may be used to carry water; for this purpose I found them very useful afterwards. The chief of the Gonaquas told me that they were made by the Caffres, from whom they got them by giving them other articles in barter.

The chief, whose name was *Haabas*, presented me with a bunch of ostrich feathers, remarkably beautiful. To convince him how much I prized it, I immediately tore away a plume of the same sort, which I wore in my hat, and put his in its room. By the looks of this good old man, I could easily discern how much he was pleased with what I had done; and he still more shewed by his gestures and words the satisfaction my conduct gave him.

It now became my turn to shew my gratitude to the chief, and I began by presenting him with a few pounds of tobacco. I was now to enjoy a most agreeable scene at very small expence, and to make more than one person happy. By a common signal *Haabas* commanded all his people to approach; and in a moment they formed themselves into a circle, and squatted down like so many apes. All the tobacco was distributed; and I observed, with much satisfaction, that the portion which *Haabas* kept for himself was not larger than those of the rest. I was sensibly touched with this goodness of heart, and just disposition, which he shewed in so simple and natural a manner; and I presented him for himself, in addition to the present made before, a knife, a piece of steel, a box of tinder, and a necklace of large glass beads. Among the women I distributed beads and copper wire for bracelets. Amidst these mutual presents and sentiments of affection with which we were reciprocally inspired, I noticed a young girl of sixteen, mixed with the crowd, who discovered more curiosity in examining my person, than anxiety to share in the trinkets which I was distributing among her companions. She looked so attentively at me, that I drew near her that she might have more leisure to survey me. I saw that her figure was quite enchanting; she had the freshest and most beautiful teeth imaginable; her person was slender and elegant, and her shape formed to inspire love, might have answered for a model to the pencil of Albano. She was the youngest sister of the *Graces*, represented in a *Hottentot*.

The impressions of beauty are universal: it is an universal sovereign; and I was sensible, by the multitude of my presents, that I bent a little under its sway. The young savage girl soon grew familiar. I had presented her with a girdle, a pair of bracelets, and a necklace
of

of large white beads, with which she appeared to be highly delighted. I loosed from my neck a red handkerchief, which she wrapped about her head; and thus dressed she was what in polite language might be called *charming*. I took great delight to ornament her myself; and, when I had done, she sought some trinkets for her sister, who had continued with the horde. She pointed out her mother with her finger; and at the same time told me that she had no father. I plagued her with questions, for I found so many charms in her replies. Nothing could surpass the delight I had in seeing her, except that which I enjoyed in her conversation. I besought her to continue with me, and made her promises of every sort; but when I mentioned to her, particularly, the carrying her with me to Europe; where I said that all the women were queens, and commanded hordes of slaves; so far from suffering herself to be tempted, she refused all my offers, and without any ceremony began to turn peevish and impatient. A king could not have overcome her resistance, and the sorrow which she felt from the mere idea of leaving her family and her horde. I finished by desiring her at least to bring her sister to me, informing her that she would have every cause to be satisfied in her turn. This she promised should be done; and at the same time fixed her eyes upon a chair which stood near me. Having pointed out to me a knife which I had left there accidentally, I presented her with it, and she instantly gave it to her mother.

Her whole thoughts were constantly engaged by her dress, which to her was entirely new. She touched her arms, her feet, her necklace, and her girdle, and put up her hands twenty times to her head to feel her handkerchief, with which she was much pleased. Having opened my dressing-box, I took a mirror from it, which I set before her; and she surveyed herself for some time in it with much attention and satisfaction. By her various gestures and attitudes, she evidently shewed how much she was pleased, I do not say with her own figure, but with her ornaments, which still had the strongest impression on her mind. Having dressed in the morning, before the horde set out to see me, she had rubbed her cheeks with grease and tallow, which I desired to be

cleaned

cleaned and washed; but I could never convince her that this assistance of art hurt the charms of nature, which had made her very pretty. Whatever ingenuity I used in my reasoning, and whatever might be the effect of her satisfaction, in restoring to her fresh cheeks that delicate bloom of youth so frail and fading, she was always attached to her abominable black grease with as much obstinacy as European ladies are to their rouge, and to all their pastes, which are no less disagreeable, and probably much more hurtful.

This young beauty having requested me to give her my glass, I complied; and she took a surprising advantage of this favour, which I had so easily granted, to ask from me every thing which struck her fancy. I always allowed myself to be overcome; but I was through time obliged to deny her several articles, both because they were indispensably necessary to me, and I dreaded that she might make a dangerous application of them. My knee-buckles had also pleased her; for the stones with which they were set had remarkably attracted her eyes; and I should have been very happy to have had it in my power to please her once more. How anxiously did I wish upon this occasion for the most trifling pair of steel ones, to replace this article of luxury, in other respects, extremely useless! Unhappily these were the only pair of knee-buckles I had in my possession: I gave her to understand that they were indispensably necessary to me, and from that instant she never more thought about them. She had sense enough not to be affronted by my refusals; it was sufficient that I said *no* only once, to make her alter the object of her attention.

Her name I found hard to pronounce, harsh to the ear, and very insignificant according to my ideas; I therefore gave her a new name, viz. *Narina*, which, in the Hottentot language, signifies *a flower*. I intreated of her to keep by this pretty name, which suited her in several respects; and this she promised to do while she lived, in remembrance of my visit to her country, and as a mark of my love, for she was already no stranger to this passion; and in her own natural and affecting language fully evidenced how powerful the first impression
is

is, and that, in the heart of the deserts of Africa, one must not even attempt happiness.

Having desired a sheep to be killed, and a large portion of our hippopotamus to be dressed to refresh our guests, they gave themselves up to all the extravagance of joy. Every body danced; and my Hottentots, like gallant and polite people, regaled these savage strangers with their music. The more skilful performers played on the goura, joumjoum, and the rabouquin; the lucky Jew's harp was not neglected; and this new instrument had the most lively effect on all the company. Narina, like all other pretty women, who think nothing too much to them, wished to attempt it also; but, like all other pretty women, in another respect also, she soon became impatient about their lesson, she disdainfully threw it away, finding her music bad.

All this day was spent in frolics and mirth; and my people distributed their portion of brandy, besides that which I had desired to be given them in particular. I remarked with pleasure that Narina could not taste it; and this sobriety redoubled the regard I had entertained for her; for I hate this liquor, and am surprised that our women should be so fond of this most hateful of all poisons.

I desired that a quantity of wood necessary for making our fires should be collected early, and this work was soon done. The Gonaquas joined our party, and made ample provision for themselves, as I had allowed them to continue with us till the next morning, and had assigned them a spot at some little distance from my camp, where they might spend the night.

When the fires were kindled in the evening, I entertained my people with tea and coffee. Narina seemed to relish the tea, but the colour of the coffee made her conceive a dislike to that liquor. I put my hand upon her eyes, and caused her swallow half a cupful more of it; but she still preferred the tea. She even drank of it frequently; and this on her part was a piece of policy which I pretended not to observe, but which amused me much. I am convinced that she did not much like this liquor, but she made haste to drink it, that she might, in the bottom of her cup, get at a piece of sugar-candy, which she had observed me put into it.

After

After this frugal banquet, and the entertaining scenes it procured me, the dancing began again, and about midnight the need of rest put an end to our amusement.

For some time past I had slept in my waggon, to shun the night damps, I entrusted the Gonaquas chief with the care of guarding my camp, and I gave the old man lodgings in my largest tent.

My readers may perhaps expect to see my favourite excepted from the law by which I restricted the whole horde to certain boundaries, and have perhaps little faith in my continence. Narina stuck close by me, and never thought of leaving her friend. I pointed out to her where her mother and friends were at some distance from us, and——Narina then wished me a good night.

I sent two of my people fully armed, to spend the night near these Gonaquas, and to defend them from ferocious animals. When all had retired to rest, I commanded that no person should be permitted either to enter in or to go out.

For my own part I could scarcely shut an eye, for every thing which had occurred since the arrival of these savages recurred to my imagination under the most whimsical and extraordinary colours. What I had learned as to the manners and character of these people, compared with the ridiculous and stupid relations of our romantic travellers, seemed to me so pure, so simple, and so engaging; my conversations especially with Haabas and Narina had been so interesting, that I cursed even the flying moments which deprived me of these animated scenes, and I regretted that I could not lengthen their course.

The day had scarcely begun to appear, when I awoke, and went to visit my Gonaquas, who were all sunk in profound sleep, lying huddled together under their krosses*. Narina lay with her mother upon a mat, which I had given her to defend her from the moisture. The other seven women, heaped all together, made a very pleasant group; for neither their heads nor feet were visible,

* These krosses are cloaks made of the skins of various animals, which the Hottentots all commonly use, either to clothe them in the day time, or to cover them in the night. I shall have occasion to mention them hereafter more particularly.

visible, as they were quite hid by their covering. Having saluted them by discharging my gun at their ears, I observed a number of frightened countenances starting up from under their krosses, which exhibited a most comical scene. Some of the sleepers however did not waken, which is not at all wonderful; for the sleep of the Hot-tentots is but a step from a lethargy.

Leaving them to regain the use of their senses at leisure, I went to walk upon the banks of the river, to kill a few birds before the heat should begin; for the north wind, which in these latitudes acts in the same way as the south in France, seemed to forebode a very scorching day. I returned at ten o'clock, with a few birds, and among others a red long-tailed fly-catcher, which I very justly thought a happy discovery. This delightful animal, the prevailing colour in which is indeed a most beautiful red, has a still more beautiful tuft on the head, and two very long feathers in the tail, which give it an air of dignity that the female does not share in with it. This advantage, however, the male only enjoys in the breeding season, which is three months: after that time these two feathers fall of themselves, and nothing then differences the male and female but a browner shade.

But we must not confound this species of bird with one of the same sort which Brisson and Buffon mention, under the name of the long-tailed crested fly-catcher of the Cape of Good Hope; for this bird is not seen at the Cape: it is a native of India, and particularly of the island of Ceylon, and differs much from this I now speak of. The marks by which they are to be known will be mentioned in my ornithology. I shall only here assure the reader that the two fly-catchers mentioned under that name, one of which is red, and the other almost white, and which are described as two distinct species, form absolutely only one; and this difference in the colour is owing to the difference of the seasons. The truth of this may be evidenced by examining one of these birds in my collection, which still sharing in both states clearly shews the successive passage from white to red.

The bird which I killed never had undergone such a change; and this distinction alone ought to prevent our
confounding

confounding them, as has been hitherto done, but to establish a new species.

Having lodged my prize in my tent, I went again to the camp of my guests; but I found there only the men; all the women had disappeared: and I was told that they were gone to bathe. Being anxious to see this ceremony, I went to the river; and was not long in finding them out, for their voices and laughing soon led me to the very spot. Slipping softly along between the trees and bushes, I got quite to the bank without being observed, and found them all swimming about, sporting in the water, and diving with amazing dexterity. When I had surveyed these female bathers at leisure, I soon finished their sport by firing my gun; upon which they all dived down in the water, leaving nothing above the surface but the very points of their noses. I then sat down on their clothes which were heaped together, where I amused myself in jeering them; and, shewing them their little aprons one after the other, invited them to come for them. Narina's mother laughed very heartily at the embarrassment of her neighbours; for she had left the water before the rest, and was resting herself under a tree, till they should come to her. Having besought me in vain for a long time to depart, only one resource was left them, which they made use of with a shrewdness which astonished me. Narina's mother well aware of the ascendancy which her beautiful daughter had over me, threw her apron and kross to her; the latter then dressing in the water, soon after came up to me, with the most simple and languishing air, to intreat that I would retire for a few moments, in order that these women might have opportunity to put on their clothes. At first I pretended to be rather obstinate; but Narina, taking my hand, pulled me along with her, till, being out of sight, she could call to her companions that they might leave the water, and dress.

Narina growing more and more familiar, continued to walk with me towards my tent, joking as freely with me as she would have done with her brother, her parents, or her companions. She jeered with me after her own way, and teased me, sometimes struggling to disengage herself from my arms, and at times, to shun me, jump-
ing

ing over bushes, ravines, and the widest ditches. At this time I was young and vigorous, long accustomed to the most fatiguing labours, and a life a thousand times harder than even these savages themselves, I could have defied an European Hercules: but whether it was custom, or some vestiges of gallantry, that made me use only half my strength against the young Narina, or that in fact she shewed more address, and was more agile in her motions, she forced me to desist, and I yielded under her efforts; but, particularly, when she got from me, to a little distance, she outstripped me in the course, and was soon far beyond my reach. With what amazing speed did she run along the highways, and by a thousand turnings return to hide herself at the edge of a wood, and to surprise me as I passed along!

Noticing birds of different kinds flying around in the forest, I could not help entering into it, as this was the only plan I could take to moderate the impetuosity of my young savage. Nothing could surpass the delight she experienced to see me fire my gun, which I did frequently, and I killed about twenty birds. I had not brought any of my dogs along with me; but Narina, who supplied their place, caught in an admirable manner those birds which were only wounded. By this time I was out of sight of my camp, and had proceeded rather too far. The sporting and diversion of my young companion at length completely bewildered me, and she did not put an end to her romping until she had given me an excellent lesson, and made the best return possible to the trick I had played her a little before, on the banks of the river Groot-Vis. Having fallen in with this river, which I knew would direct me to my camp, I fired at a heron, and killed it. Falling near the bank, and being carried away by the current, I was in danger of losing it; and this disappointment would have given me the greater uneasiness, as one of the same species, which I procured with much difficulty, had one day, by the negligence of some of my people, been entirely spoilt in my tent. I therefore plunged into the river, which reached up to my middle; but getting entangled in the herbs which grew on its banks, and having not yet forgot the accident at Queur-Boom, I was unwilling to advance farther. Narina, who

perceived my embarrassment, and the awkward situation into which I had got by running after my bird, was much astonished that I should be afraid of trusting myself to the current. In an instant therefore she threw herself into the water, and began to swim, whilst I returned to the bank; but the cruel creature who had seized my bird, held it up in her hand, and, calling out to me, desired me to come and fetch it. After a thousand prayers, and the most earnest entreaties, instead of complying with my request she made for the other bank, with the velocity of an arrow, where she ridiculed me at her ease, and laughed at me for my timidity. I have already said that I could not swim: and if ever there was a conjuncture in which I had cause of complaint, this doubtless was a mortifying one, and should have incited me in the strongest manner to supply this inexcusable defect in my education. Finding that I could have no influence upon my beautiful romp, I determined to sit down on the edge of the river, and to wait patiently for her. She soon wearied of the sport herself; and, throwing herself again into the river, swam over, after discovering her skill, by diving several times in her way. As she was swimming over I repeatedly presented my gun, as if about to fire at her; but nothing that I could do appeared to frighten her. For this reason she was still more toysome, and persisted in refusing me the heron. We both however in a little pursued our way very peaceably together, and went again towards the tent.

The other Gonaqua women, whom we had left farther down upon the banks of the river, having met us, I could evidently read some traces of shame in their faces and looks. I myself indeed ought to have blushed, for hurting their delicacy in so very cruel a manner. Upon this occasion I saw natural modesty, which is widely different indeed from that reserve which women frequently assume through pride, and which is only a seducing stratagem, more hurtful than scandal brought to the completest embarrassment.

Having given my savages their dinner, I desired the table to be brought me upon which I dissected my animals, and which I used for that purpose solely. This, with two chairs, was all the furniture I had in my tent.

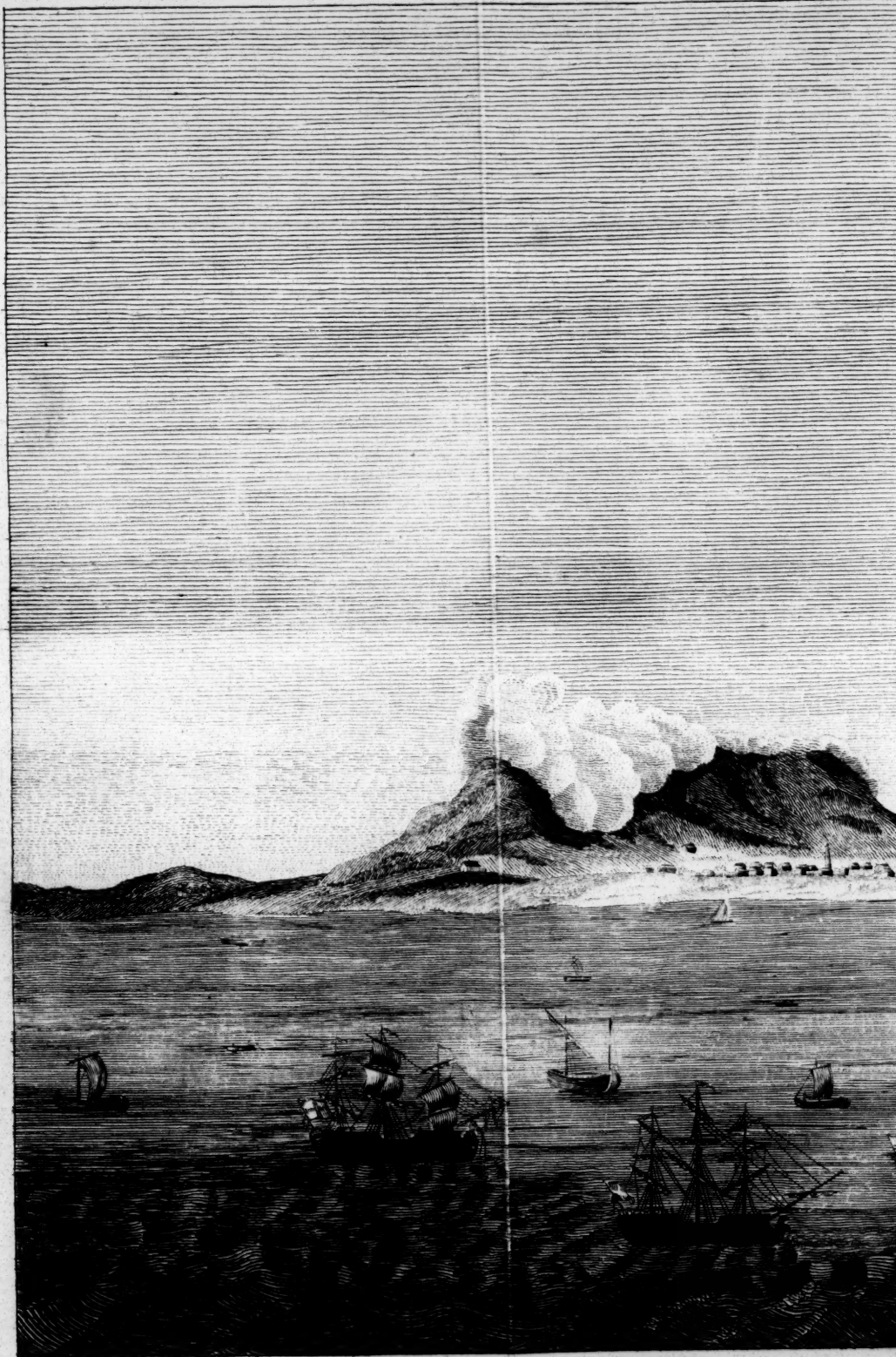
I then

I then proceeded to flay the birds I had slain in the morning. This business astonished them exceedingly; they looked at me with amazement, and could not understand why I had killed these birds merely to strip them, and immediately thereafter to give them again their former appearance. I did not however spend my time in vaunting to them of the cabinets and collections of Europe, or in saying how highly they were valued. They no doubt might have been surprised that I should have undertaken such a journey with no other intent than to procure animals: and Narina's question, who asked me if we had no birds in our country, struck me as extremely simple and natural. I concluded that no dissertation upon this subject with savages, who would not have understood what I said, was equal to the satisfaction of preparing a king's-fisher, which I presented to my inquisitive beauty.

The chief, Haabas, prevailed upon me to remove my camp, that I might pitch it nearer his horde, where he said I should find a very great variety of birds of every sort. Having informed me that we were only about two leagues from it, I engaged that I would be there in the course of a very few days.

While he prepared to depart, I treated him and all his company with a dinner, and gave him a small portion of tobacco for himself, which pleased him much. Narina engaged to bring me milk, and to come again with her sister very soon. In a word, these good savages left me, highly pleased with their visit, and indeed each of us with the other, and bidding one another *farewel* a thousand times; I sent a few of my people along with them, in order to get some sheep by barter, and to examine the road which we proposed speedily to take.

Engraved for Morison's Edition of Vaillant's Tr



View of the Mountains and
covered with Clouds